



Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

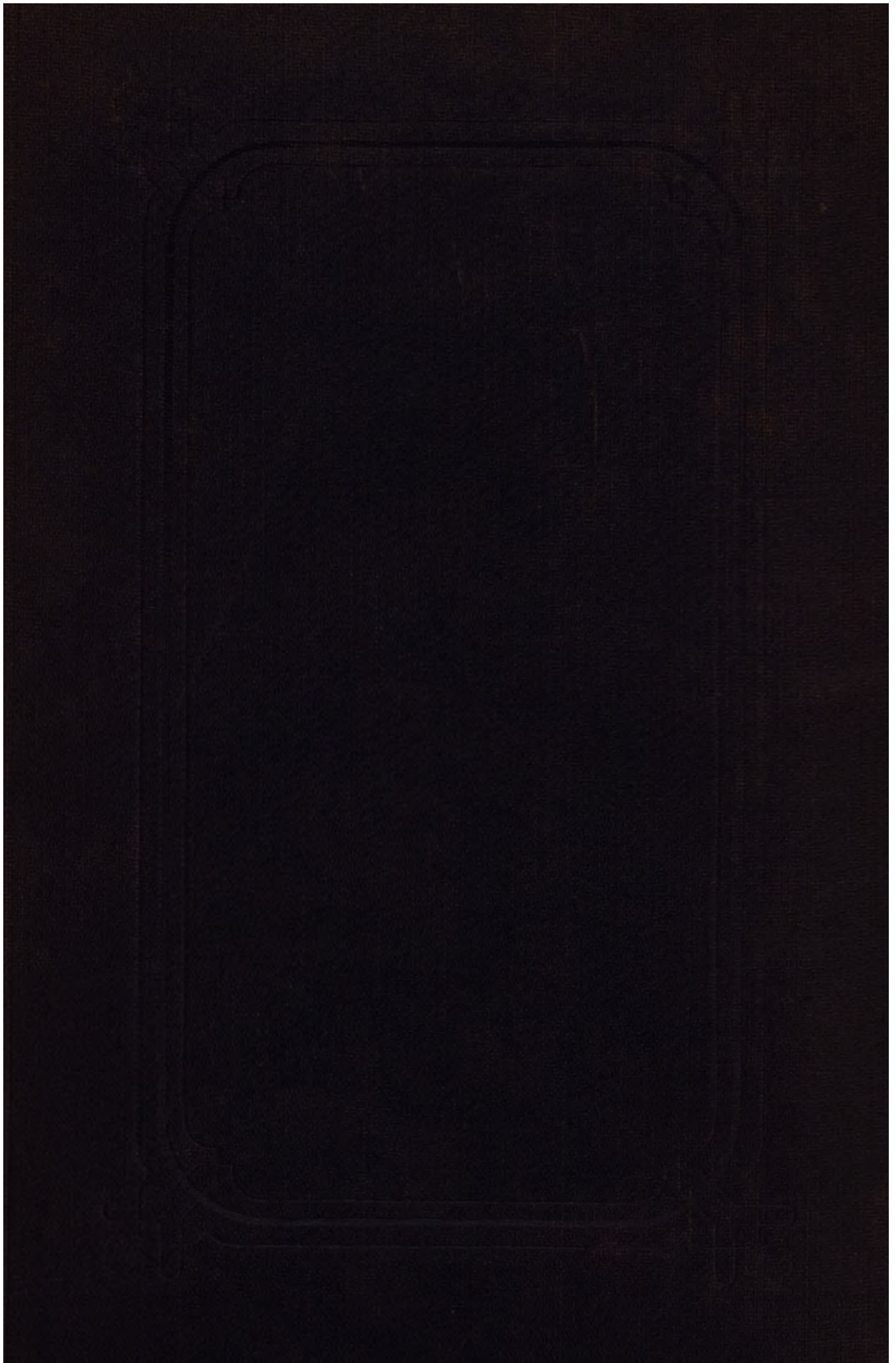
This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>

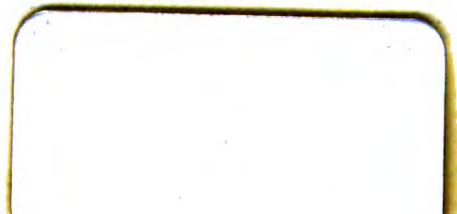


This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.





600093651U





A PRACTICAL COMPENDIUM
OF
GERMAN GRAMMAR
ON
MNEMONIC PRINCIPLES,
WITH
NUMEROUS SIMPLIFICATIONS,
RHYMING LISTS AND SUMMARIES

CAREFULLY ADAPTED
TO ASSIST THE MEMORY AND FAMILIARISE THE EAR.

BY
DAVID MILNE M. A.

LONDON.
Longmans, Green and Co.
1875.

303. g. 185.

1



r

•

P r e f a c e .

The practical use of a language, as a means either of conversation or of training the discriminating faculties, requires, as a necessary basis, a certain acquaintance with the vocables and their etymological forms, as well as with the phraseology and idiomatic structure of the language; readiness and accuracy in speaking, writing, or even in translating it, can only be acquired by great familiarity with these subjects. The adult cannot expect to imbibe this knowledge in the same way as a child, for he has already acquired the words and forms of thought of his own language, and does not naturally begin as a child to use the vocables of another language as an instrument of thought. If again an adult wishes to familiarise himself with a language by conversing with natives, he must expect to hear a more difficult language than that of children; but, in any case, the profit, which he is likely to derive from such conversation, will depend upon the stock of words and forms of speech, which he has within his mental reach. The first task will be to commit these to memory, and this will be facilitated by judicious classifications, by rhyming or mnemonic rules, by a clear and logical arrangement of the subject, and by comparing the new with one's native language. Even the practice, requisite to give readiness in using and recognising words and their different forms, will be best supplied by systematic exercises on the peculiarities of grammar.

The rules and lists given in this grammar have been classified and rhymed with the greatest care, so as to relieve as much as possible the labour and tedium of learning

them. As it frequently happens in German that a word is irregular in more respects than one, an attempt is here made to meet the difficulties together. For instance, in the lists of nouns, when the plural form is a sufficient index by which one may distinguish the gender, the word is given in the plural; and, similarly, if the gender serves to indicate the plural, the word is given in the singular with the definite article attached. The meaning also of the word is commonly given along with its grammatical irregularities; for the student *must* learn the word and its meaning sometime and somewhere, and, if he learns it in such a connexion as to learn by the same effort its grammatical forms, he will thereby make his labour more effective. If the word be a noun, he will thus by one effort learn its meaning, its gender, and its declension; if it be a verb, he will learn its meaning and its irregular parts.

Another peculiarity of these lists is that words having a similar meaning are grouped together, with a view to render the lists less dull and difficult, and to adapt them for reading as well as for committing to memory. By reading the lists several times attentively (with the English), the student will acquire readiness in recognising and in using the words. Committing to memory is, of course, a much more impressive mode of learning than reading is; and one must not imagine that this impression is lost, though the exact order of the words in the lists be afterwards forgotten. Great care has been taken with the rhymes and metre, so as not to offend the ear in reading or repeating these lists.

As the variety of exceptional forms and the number of exceptional words are apt to tire and bewilder the student, the subject is arranged in such a way as to give him clear and complete ideas as he goes on, the most important lists coming usually first. In this way, the weak declension is treated of before the strong, not only because it is simpler, but also because one can readily learn all the weak monosyllables, and thus acquire at once a distinct idea what

monosyllables are weak and what are strong. For the same reason, the strong neuters forming the plural in *er* are given before the neuters which form the plural in *e*. The list of masculine monosyllables which do not modify the plural is shorter than that of those which do; but it is important to accustom one's ear to the sound of the modified plural. The student may learn either list or both.

The classification of the irregular verbs is the same as that adopted in the best grammars such as those of Bekker and Hoffmann; while advantage has been taken of several remarkable sequences of the vowels, of the roots, to construct a tabulated *memoria technica*, by means of which one can readily attain a knowledge of the subject, and to which one can readily refer in the intercourse of life. In addition to this table, the irregular verbs have been given in rhyming lists along with the English and the principal parts, so as to accustom the student to use and recognise them.

In many Grammars, the list of conjunctions is mixed up with that of connective adverbs; or, if the two lists are given separately, no means is supplied, whereby the student can distinguish the one set of words from the other, unless he learns them by heart. As the order of words in the sentence is differently affected by these two classes of words, a simple way of distinguishing them has been introduced, founded on the fact that the adverb is moveable in the sentence, while the conjunction must commence it. The student will thus be able without hesitation, to determine whether the word be a conjunction or a connective adverb, and what will consequently be the order of words in the sentence. The construction of sentences in German is treated of so as to train the learner in the logical analysis of sentences — an exercise which the Germans first introduced, and for which their grammar has special adaptations.

The subject of particles has been fully treated of, their senses being compared and discriminated. A chapter on adverbs used as expletives may supply information on a neglected subject.

Teachers often find it necessary to prescribe not merely a chapter to be read, or an exercise to be written, but short and concise portions to be learned by heart. Accordingly, short metrical summaries have been given at the end of each chapter, containing the substance of what is more fully explained in the prose, with short examples to make the rule or summary more intelligible. Some supplementary chapters concerning the use of the article, the government of verbs and adjectives, the use of prepositions after verbs and in phrases, have been given in rhyming rules. Perhaps the most difficult task in German Grammar is to make one's self familiar with the correct use of prepositions; and it is hoped that the part of the supplement, which treats of this subject, will be found to be an efficient means of acquiring a thorough, practical acquaintance with it.

Alphabetical lists of the nouns and verbs are given in the last part of the book. Two supplementary lists contain the rest of the monosyllables and nouns ending in *el*, *en* and *er*. A subsequent appendix gives rhyming as well as alphabetical lists of all the foreign words, about whose gender and declension the student need have any hesitation.

One author, Meissner, has written a book of exercises (published in Thimm's series) adapted to any grammar; but any fully developed grammar will suit almost any book of exercises, if the order of the chapters corresponds. Such exercises as Tiark's or Wittich's would be suitable to this grammar, which may also be used as a supplement to the so-called practical methods of Ahn, Schlutter and others. If the book be favourably received, special exercises can be provided.

My best thanks are due to Prof. Meissner of the Queen's University, Belfast, to Herr C. Jeep of the International College at Spring Grove, near London, and to the Revd. J. S. Dawes, M. A., Surbiton, Surrey, for their kindness in revising my book, and for many valuable suggestions.

Contents.

Part I. Alphabet and Pronunciation	1
Part II. Etymology	7
Article	8
Noun	9
Gender	10
Declension	16
Lists of Substantives	25
Adjectives	45
Comparison of Adjectives	48
Pronouns	52
Numerals	65
Verb	76
Auxiliaries of tense	79
Auxiliaries of mood	94
Irregular Verbs	106
Reflective Verbs	119
Impersonal Verbs	121
Separable and Inseparable Prefixes	124
Adverbs	140
Expletives	145
Prepositions	152
Conjunctions	158
Part III. Construction of Sentences	163
Simple Sentences	163
Arrangement of Words	164
Attributive Sentences	172
Adverbial Sentences	172
Noun Sentences, Indirect Speech &c.	179
Infinitive and Participial Clauses	182

Supplementary chapters.

On the Use of the Article	193
On the Use of the Cases	197
Prepositions forming objects of verbs	200
Prepositions in adverbial Phrases	207
Punctuation	215
Prosody	216
Vocabulary of Primary Nouns	219
Supplementary Lists	230
Alphabetical List of Strong Verbs	244
Appendix on Foreign Nouns	250
Index	259

Alterations.

Page 5, line 16, for *when emphatic*, read: *when these words are first in the sentence or emphatic*.

Page 11, between line 8 and line 9, insert: *der Thee, der Kaffee, Käse, Klee, der Schnee*.

Page 41, line 22, for *die Generale, Generäle*, read: *die Generale, Admiräle*.

Part I.

Alphabet and Pronunciation.

Names.	English Equivalents.
А а Ah	like a in <i>father</i> .
В в Bey	as in English, when final like p nearly.
С с Tsey	like k before a, e, u otherwise like ts
Д д Dey	as in English, when final like t nearly.
Е е Ey	like ay in <i>say</i> , or, if short, like e in <i>better</i> .
Ф ф Ef	as in English.
Г г Guey	as in English, when final like g, the preceding syllable being pronounced, a little longer, thus mag, Tag = mäch Täch, guttural, nearly.
Х х Hah	a strong aspirate at the beginning of a syllable; mute when final, after t and after vowels.
И и Ee	like ee in <i>seen</i> , or if short like i in <i>sit</i> .
Й й Yot	like y in <i>yes</i> .
К к Kah	as in English.
Л л El	do.
М м Em	do.
Н н En	do.
О о O	like o in <i>note</i> or <i>not</i> .
П п Pey	as in English.
Q q Koo	followed by u, like kv. thus Quelle (kvelle).
Р р Err	rougher and stronger than in English.
С с Ess	like English z at the beginning of a syllable, and like ss at the end of one.
Т т Tey	as in English, but like ts in foreign words ending in tion, tia &c.

- U u Oo like oo in *fool* or *foot*.
V v Fow like f, except in foreign words, when it is
like v.
W w Vey like English v.
X x Iks like ks.
Z z Tset like ts.

Modified Vowels.

Ä ä like ea in *pear*; De ö like eu in *French*; Ue ü like u
in *French*.

Diphthongs.

- Au like ow in *cow*; eu and äu like oy in *boy*; ai and ei
like English y and i in *by* and *wine*.
Ch is guttural, pronounced like a strong h from the throat,
except before j and at the beginning of words of Greek
and Latin origin, when it is pronounced like k. Thus
Wachſ is pronounced *Wacks*, Chriſt like *Krist*. In words
derived from French, it retains its French pronuncia-
tion, as in Charlatan pronounced *Sharlatan*.
Ph is used almost exclusively in words of Greek origin and
is pronounced like f, as in Philosophie, Westphalen.
Sch is pronounced like sh in English, thus Schuh like *shoe*.
T is pronounced exactly like t.
Dt in Stadt is pronounced tt as in Statt. In some words
dt come together by dropping e, and the preceding
vowel is therefore long, thus tōdt is pronounced tōt,
berēdt like berēt.
Ng when final in German words is often pronounced as it
would be in the middle of an English word; and *vice*
versa, when it is in the middle of German words, it is
pronounced like final ng in English. Thus pronounce
Ding as *dingue* or in finger; but in German pronounce
Finger like *Fing'r*.
Kn, Pf and Pſ have both letters pronounced; thus Knabe,
Pfeife, Pfalm are pronounced K-nabe, P-feife, P-salm.
Cf is the double of f, as Stocf, Rocf.
Zz is the double of z, as Bliß, troßen.

Œ is pronounced like sharp s: thus, Fluß pronounced like English *goose*.

Œ is the double of ſ, or sharp s.

NB. The Germans do not write ff at the end of a word or radical syllable but ſ instead. Thus we write der Fluß, the river, but die Flüſſe, the rivers, das Flüßchen, the rivulet; wir müſſen, we must, but er muß, he must. The German orthography employs ſ for the same purpose as the English employs ce in *face*, namely to prevent the sound of z from being substituted for sharp s, as in *phase*.

In German all substantives and words used substantively are written with a capital letter. So likewise are the pronouns which represent the person addressed, corresponding in English to *you*, *yours*, but not the first personal pronoun ich. The first word after a full stop, and the first word of a quoted passage, are also spelled with capitals.

The Accent.

In German some syllables are pronounced with a full accent, some without any accent; and others, which are sometimes accented and sometimes not, are said to have the demi-accent. The general rules of accentuation are as follow:

1. Simple German monosyllabic roots are pronounced with the full accent; but, if a simple German word consists of two syllables, the first syllable is the radical one and has the accent. Thus the accent in Vater, Leben, Straße &c. is on Va, Le &c. The emphasis thus given to the first syllable causes final e to be pronounced slightly, like the English articles the man, the house. So Straße, Liebē &c.

2. The accent in foreign words is on the last syllable as, Prophét, Soldát, Religió &c.

3. In compound words, such as Dampfsboot, eisfalt, abnehmen &c. the principal accent is on the first part Dampf, eis, ab &c.; and if the first part consist of more than one syllable, the accent is on the first of these: as, Apfelbäume,

Dünfelblau &c. There is also a minor accent on the second part of the compound.

4. The inseparable prefixes *be, ver, er, ge, zer, ent* and *emp*, the articles *der, ein*, the supine *zu* before infinitives, *es, man, so*, the suffixes *chen, de, ge, el, elm, em, en, er, ern, ig, jel, the, tet, ter, zig, ßig* are not accented; *icht, igt, ling, end* and *ernd* have the semi-accent.

5. *Durch, über, unter, voll* and *um* have the accent when separable not when inseparable; thus *únterhalten* to keep under, but *unterhálden* to amuse, to entertain, because in the former sense *unter* can be separated from *halten*, and in the latter sense it cannot be separated. So *wiederholen* to fetch back but *wiederhólen* to repeat. *Wiederhólen* is the only compound of *wieder*, that, admits the accent on the last syllable.

6. Auxiliary verbs when monosyllables as *hat, bist, wird, soll, kann* &c.

7. Suffixes forming secondary derivatives and significant: as, *schaft, ung, bar* &c.

8. The uninflected parts of speech when monosyllables: as, *von, in, weil, bald* &c.

9. Monosyllabic pronouns: as, *er, sie, wir* &c.

have the semitone and in poetry may be either long or short, accented or not accented, according to their position. See Chap. on Prosody.

Exceptions: The compounds of *all* as *allmächtig allgemein* &c., have the accent on the latter part of the word; but *állmacht* has the accent on *all*.

Verbs which have received a foreign termination, especially *iren*, put the accent upon it: as, *marſchíren*.

The affixes *ei* and *lei* always have the accent, thus *Rei-teréi, allerléi*.

When three words are combined to form one compound, and the two last words form a compound by themselves, in common use, these may retain the accent: thus, *Feldmarſchall, Hofpóſtmeiſter*, but *ſáſtnachtsſpiel, Pſérde-Eiſenbahn*.

In the same way *bar, lich, ig, ſchaft, ung, feit, er* (in nouns derived from verbs) often draw the accent forward

on the second part of the compound as in vorzüglich, hauptsächlich, barmherzig, lebendig, freiwillig, Hinterlassenschaft, Unternehmung &c.

Miß is accented, except in mißfallen to displease, mißglücken mißrathen to fail, mißgönnen to grudge.

Un is accented except in unablässig unremitting, unstréitig indisputable, untadelig unblameable, unzählígg innumerable, unaufhältígg unrestrainable, undénfbar unimaginable, undénflich immemorial, unfehlbar infallible, ungeheúer immense; also in adjectives ending in bar and lich, and having another prefix (not ge) after un: as, unbezíggbar invincible, unaussprechlich unspeakable; and in participles meaning *without being*: as, ungerufen without being sent for, but ungezícht not clever; ungerácht, without being revenged.

Ur is always accented except in urplóßlich, all of a sudden, and uríprúnglich originally; but *when emphatic* the first has the accent, as in other cases: e. g. dafür, davon &c.

The General Rules of Accentuation.

In simple words the accent, tone, is on the first or root alone; ¹

but not in foreign words: accent their latter part, as in Student. ²

In words made up of two, the stress is on the first, the next has less. ³

The following syllables we don't accent: the prefixes be, ver, er, ge, zer, ent, nor emp which in a few is put for em, inflexions added to the root or stem.

Zu placed before infinitives, es *it*, so when conjunction, man indefinite ein *a*, der *the*, when used as articles, are always unaccented particles. ⁴

Durch, über, unter, voll and um, when separable, and put in room of leading word, have emphasis; so commonly have un, ur, miß. ⁵

Auxiliaries of mood and tense, ⁶ and suffixes with special sense, ⁷ the uninflected parts of speech, ⁸ and pronouns too are common, ⁹ each such monosyllable may be a short or long in poetry.

Long and Short Vowels.

Ha, ee, oo are merely long a, long e, long o; thus Haar, Meer, Boot are pronounced Hār, Mēr, Böt.

The vowel i is marked as long by writing e after it; thus hier, Bier are pronounced as the English *here*, *beer*.

Any vowel is marked as long which has h after it; thus Sohn, ihm, Muth, Schuh are pronounced sōn, im, mūt, shū.

Any vowel is marked as short by having the following consonant doubled; thus Kräbbe, Tuppe, Nüß.

General Rule. All syllables terminated by a vowel or by a single consonant are long; and all terminated by a double consonant or by two consonants in the same radical syllable are short.

Examples of long vowels: dā, trē-ten, Täg.

Examples of short vowels: Schiff, werfen, Füllen, Kunst.

Exceptions. 1. Th is never considered as a double consonant; on the contrary the h after t marks the preceding syllable as long: as, Gluth often written Glut.

2. Gh is never doubled and therefore it does not appear at first sight whether the vowel, which precedes it, be long or short. Before ch, a and ä are short: as Dach, Dächer, except in nāch, Schmach, Sprache and the imperfects brach, stach, sprach. E, i, o, ö are always short before ch as brechen brich, Loch Löcher, except in hōch; u, ü are long before ch: as, Buch Bücher, except Bruch, Spruch, Geruch.

3. We mentioned that ß is not reckoned as a double consonant, but only as sharp s, serving the same purpose as ce in English *face*, to prevent its being pronounced like *phrase*. As double j is usually written ff, but ß at the end of radical syllables, there arises an uncertainty, when ß closes the syllable, whether it represent double or single s, and whether thus the preceding vowel be long or short. Sz does not shorten the vowel in außer, bloß, Buße, erboßen, Fuß, Gefäß, groß, Kloß, müßig, Preußen, Spaß, Stoß, süß, Straße, flößen, Gruß, heiß, weiß, and derivatives; in the imperfects fraß, saß, maß, vergaß, heißen, hieß. If a termination be added

to these, *ß* is not changed into *ff*. Pronounce *ou-cer*, *Proi-cen*, *Stra-ce*.

4. All unaccented syllables are short, as the following particles &c.: *ab*, *an*, *am*, *bis*, *in*, *im*, *mit*, *ob*, *um*, *von*, *von*, *weg* &c.

5. When two consonants come together, by dropping *e* in the present and imperfect of the indicative and in the past participle of verbs, the preceding vowel remains long; thus *du löbst* (for *lebest*), *du gābst* (for *gabest*), *gelēbt* (for *gelēbet*) &c.. In the same way it is long in *größte*, *tōdt*, *Dbst*, *Bōgt*.

6. *Art*, *ert*, *urt* are long, through some influence of the letter *r* in *Art*, *Bärt*, *Fährt*, *Hērd*, *Pfērd*, *Schwērt*, *wērtly*, *Gebūrt*, *Arzt*, *Härz*, *Börse*, *Erde*, *zart*.

7. *o*, *ö* and *ü* are long before *st* in *Trōst* *trōsten*, *Rüster*, *Nüster*, *Wüste*, *Klöster*, *düster*, *hüsten*, *Schüster*, *Dstern*.

The short pronunciation of words like *Bad*, *Glas*, *Gras*, *Grab*, *Hof*, *Kad*, *Tag*, *Weg* is now merely peculiar to some dialects.

Part II.

ETYMOLOGY.

There are ten parts of speech, *Wortarten*: 1. *Das Geschlechtswort* the article, 2. *das Hauptwort*, the substantive, 3. *das Eigenschaftswort*, the adjective, 4. *das Fürwort*, the pronoun, 5. *das Zahlwort*, the numeral, 6. *das Zeitwort*, the verb, 7. *das Verhältnißwort*, the preposition, 8. *das Umstandswort*, the adverb, 9. *das Empfindungswort*, the interjection, 10. *das Bindewort*, the conjunction.

The first six have inflections (*Biegung*). In the first five, this inflection is called declension (*Declination*); in the verb, conjugation (*Abwandlung*).

Declension refers to gender, number and case.

The Gender (*das Geschlecht*) of nouns is of three kinds

1. the masculine, das männliche, 2. the feminine, das weibliche, and 3. the neuter, das sächliche.

There are two numbers: the singular die Einzahl, and the plural die Mehrzahl.

There are four cases:

1. the Nominative Nennfall oder Werfall answers the question who?
2. „ Genitive Besizfall oder Wessenfall „ „ „ whose?
3. „ Dative Gebefall oder Wemfall „ „ „ to whom?
4. „ Accusative Anklagefall oder Wenfall „ „ „ whom?

The Article, der Artikel.

There are two articles: the definite and the indefinite. They point out the person or thing spoken of, either in a definite way, as some particular one, or in an indefinite way as any one of the class. In German they serve also to point out the gender.

The definite article is thus declined:

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural for all genders	
Nom.	der	die	das	die	the
Gen.	des	der	des	der	of the
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den	to the
Acc.	den	die	das	die	the

Decline, like der, the two demonstrative pronouns dieser diese dieses this, and jener jene jenes that. Observe that das has not the regular termination es in the neuter like dieses and jenes.

The indefinite article is thus declined:

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural of kein no	
Nom.	ein	eine	ein	a	keine
Gen.	eines	einer	eines	of a	keiner
Dat.	einem	einer	einem	to a	keinen
Acc.	einen	eine	ein	a	keine

Decline, in the same way as ein and kein, the possessive pronouns mein my, dein thy, sein his or its, ihr her, unser our, euer your, ihr their.

The Noun, das Hauptwort.

Nouns are names 1) of real persons and things (Personen- und Sachnamen) or 2) of some abstract quality conceived of in thought (Gedankennamen). The former kind of nouns are divided into

1. Proper nouns (Eigennamen), as Wilhelm, England, Rhein &c.
2. Common nouns (Gattungsnamen), as Mensch man, Thier beast.
3. Collective nouns (Sammelnamen), as Heer army, Volk people.
4. Names of Materials (Stoffnamen), as Wasser water, Tuch cloth.

All nouns are written in German with a capital letter.

The roots of all nouns in German are original monosyllables, which form the stems of verbs.

Primary derivatives are formed from these:

- a) Without any change: as, der Fall the fall, from fallen; der Schlag, from schlagen to strike.
- b) By modifying the vowel without any affix, as der Wurf the throw, from werfen to throw; der Schritt the step, from schreiten to step.
- c) By the addition of one of the affixes el, en, er, t, d, e, which are non-significant, that is, do not affect the meaning of the words, as der Flügel the wing, der Wagen the waggon, der Finger finger, die Schlacht the fight, die Frage the question.

Secondary derivatives are formed by adding terminations which are significant, that is, affect the meaning of the word e. g. die Freundschaft friendship &c.

Derivatives formed by adding t, e, ft, th to primary roots have been called middle form derivatives: die Schlacht the battle, die Flucht the flight, die Hitze the heat.

The Genders of Nouns.

General Rules for the Masculine.

The days¹, the seasons², months³, the stones⁴, the wind⁵, and males (not such generic words as Kind)⁶ are masculine⁷; add generally to these most monosyllables or primaries, which add no suffix to the verbal stem⁸, and most that end in el, en, er and m⁹.

1. The days are *der Montag* Monday, *der Dienstag* Tuesday, *der Mittwoch*, *der Donnerstag*, *der Freitag*, *der Samstag* or *Sonnabend*, *der Sonntag*.

2. The seasons are *der Frühling* spring, *der Sommer* summer, *der Herbst* autumn, *der Winter* winter.

3. The months are *der Januar*, *Februar*, *März*, *April*, *Mai*, *Juni*, *Juli*, *August*, *September*, *October*, *November*, *Dezember*.

4. *Der Stein* the stone, *der Marmor* marble, *der Kiesel* the flint, *der Diamant* the diamond &c. are masculine.

5. *Der Wind* the wind, *der Nord* or *der Nordwind*, *der Süd* or *der Südwind*, *der Ost* or *der Ostwind* the East wind, *der West* or *Westwind* are masculine.

6. Masc. *der Knabe* Fem. *die Magd* Gener. *das Kind* the child
 der Hengst *die Stute* *das Pferd* the horse
 der Stier *die Kuh* *das Rind* the bullock
 der Eber *die Sau* *das Schwein* the swine
 der Hahn *die Henne* *das Huhn* the chicken.

7. When the feminine constitutes the name of the species, *er* or *rich* designates the male; thus *die Katze* the cat, *der Kater* the tom cat; *die Gans* the goose, *der Gänserich* the gander.

8. Monosyllabic primaries are commonly masculine, as well as those ending in *el*, *en*, *er*.

9. *Der Baum* the tree, *der Sturm* the storm, *der Schwarm* the swarm, *der Keim* the germ, *der Strom* the stream, *der Wurm* the worm, *der Athem* breath &c. These are derivatives in *m* (see Becker p. 103), and are all masculine.

General Rules for the Feminine.

Derivatives in *schaft*, *ung*, *in* and *heit* are feminine, with those in *ei* and *feit*, some nouns in *el* and *er*, but none in *en*, and those in *e*, except the names of men, *der Affe*, *Bulle*, *Drache*, *Falke*, *Knabe*, *der Götze*, *Hase*, *Löwe*, *Kapue*, *Kabe*, *das Auge*, *Ende*, *Erbe*, *lake der See*.

The most are feminine, that end in *t*.

1. *Ei* is usually affixed to personal nouns to express their condition or business: as, *die Sklaverei* slavery, *die Malerei* painting. *Schaft* affixed to personal nouns expresses the whole united body: thus, *die Priester-schaft* the priesthood, *die Bürger-schaft* the body of citizens. *Ei* and *schaft* are less frequently affixed to other words to denote qualities, e. g. *die Heuchelei* hypocrisy, *die Schmeichelei* flattery, *die Eigenschaft* a quality, *die Wissenschaft* science &c.

2. *ung* is usually affixed to the infinitives of verbs to denote the result of an action: thus, *das Hoffen* hoping, *die Hoffnung* hope; *das Erziehen* the bringing up of children, *die Erziehung* education &c. The rest have a collective sense: *die Kleidung* clothing, *die Stallung* stabling, *die Waldung* woodland &c.

3. *In* is the characteristic affix to form the feminine: *der Hirt* the shepherd, *die Hirtin* the shepherdess, *der König* the king, *die Königin* the queen.

4. *E*, *heit*, *feit* are affixed to adjectives to denote abstract qualities, *feit* being the proper termination of the derived noun, when the adjective has been itself formed by means of a suffix as *bar*, *el*, *er*, *ig*, *lich* or *sam*. Thus from *zart* tender is formed *Zartheit* tenderness, and also *Zärtlichkeit* tenderness. From *schön* beautiful is derived *die Schönheit* beauty, but from *danfbar* thankful is formed *die Danfbarkeit* thankfulness.

5. The list of feminines ending in *el* and *er* (as *die Gabel* the fork, *die Leiter* the ladder &c.) is given at the end of the weak declension.

6. Der Bote the messenger, der Bube the boy, der Junge the lad, youth, der Knabe the boy, der Neffe the nephew, der Zeuge the witness, are of course masculine, and the following names of animals &c. ending in e:

der Affe the ape der Falke the falcon der Rabe the raven
 der Drache the dragon der Hase the hare der Rappe black horse
 der Götze the idol der Löwe the lion der Weihe the kite.

Der Thee, der Kaffee, der Käse, der Klee are foreign words. Das Auge the eye, das Ende the end, das Erbe the inheritance, and a few foreign words: as, das Kanapéé the sofa, are neuter.

All other nouns in e are feminine, if we do not consider as properly belonging to this class some nouns which have two forms, one in en, and another in e formed by dropping n. The list of these nouns is given below under the mixed declension: der Buchstabe, Gedanke &c.

General Rules for the Neuter.

Diminutives that end in chen and lein
 Are neuter; those in ling are masculine¹
 The compound nouns in eck², and parts in tel³
 are neuter, most in niß⁴, thum⁵, sal and jel⁶
 Die Trübsal, some in niß are feminine A*
 Der Reichthum, Irrthum, Wechsel masculine⁷.
 Collective nouns with prefix ge are neuter⁸,
 and names of stuff, as Wasser, Holz and Futter⁹.
 With these go metals: thus, das Gold Metall¹⁰,
 except der Nickel, Zink, der Tomback, Stahl¹¹.
 The other parts of speech, when used as nouns,
 are neuter gender¹², so are names of towns¹³,
 and countries, districts¹⁴, not in z, au, ei:
 Die Schweiz, der Gau, die Moldau, Wallachei¹⁵.

1. chen and lein express littleness, fondness: thus, das Mütterchen the little mother, das Söhnchen the little son, das Kindlein the baby; ling oftener expresses contempt: der Miethling the hireling, der Höfling the courtier, der Weltling the wordling.

2. Das Dreieck the triangle, das Viereck the square, das Fünfeck the pentagon &c.

3. Das Drittel the third part, das Viertel the quarter, das Mittel the means.

4. Derivatives in niß are formed from verbs and adjectives, especially from those, which have the particles be, ge, ver prefixed; thus das Verhältniß the relation, das Gedächtniß the memory, das Bedürfniß the want, das Zeugniß the testimony &c. For exceptions see note A* below.

5. thum is usually affixed to personal names, and denotes the rank or property, belonging to the united body, while schaft denotes the body or society itself. Thus das Ritterthum means knighthood, while die Ritterschaft means the order or body of knights. Nouns in thum are neuter: das Eigenthum the property, das Alterthum antiquity &c. Except der Reichthum riches, and der Irrthum the error.

6. Nouns in sal and sel are neuter: as, das Schicksal fate, das Drangsal the calamity, das Räthsel the riddle, das Ueberbleibsel the remainder &c. Except die Trübsal the trial, affliction, der Wechsel exchange, der Stöpsel the stopper.

8. Das Gebirge the range of mountains, das Geräth furniture &c. are collective nouns. For exceptions, see note B*.

9. Das Wasser water, das Holz wood, das Futter food for cattle &c. are names of stuff.

10. Das Gold gold, das Blei lead, das Eisen iron &c. are names of metals.

11. Der Nickel the metal nickel, der Zink zinc, der Tomback pinchbeck, der Stahl steel, are exceptions.

12. Infinitives: as, das Schreiben writing, das Lesen reading are neuter; and so: das Blau the blue, das Bitter the bitter, das Wohl the advantage &c.

13. Das alte Rom ancient Rome, das schöne Frankfurt beautiful Frankfort.

14. Europa, Amerika, Afrika, Asien, Australien, Stalien, Egypten, Bayern, Sachsen, Preußen, Schweden, Belgien, Norwegen, Spanien, Frankreich, Oestreich, England, Deutschland, Rußland &c. are neuter.

15. Die Schweiz Switzerland, die Lausitz, die Pfalz, der Gau a district, die Türkei are exceptions.

Note A* Feminines in niß:

The following exceptions in niß, which belong to the feminine gender, in plural are strong:
 Besorgniß anxiety, darkness die Finsterniß,
 die Fäulniß, Verdammniß, die Wildniß the wilderness,
 Bekümmerniß sorrow, Bewandniß condition,
 Ersparniß or savings, Erlaubniß permission,
 Betrübniß affliction, oppression Bedrängniß,
 Befugniß authority, Kenntniß, Empfängniß.

die Bedrängniß oppression	die Erlaubniß the permission
die Befugniß authority	die Ersparniß the savings
die Bekümmerniß sorrow	die Fäulniß the rottenness
die Besorgniß anxiety	die Finsterniß the darkness
die Betrübniß affliction	die Kenntniß the knowledge
die Bewandniß the state, condition,	die Verdammniß the condemnation
die Empfängniß conception	die Wildniß the wilderness.

Note B* Feminine Nouns with prefix Ge.

The feminine non-collective nouns in Ge in schaft, ung, heit, feit mean a quality; and some in e, t — gesture die Geberde
 Geschichte history, Gefahr, Gefährde,
 Gemeinde congregation, form Gestalt,
 Geduld the patience, violence Gewalt,
 Geschwulst the boil, Gebühr the due or fee,
 Geburt the birth, Gewähr the guarantee.

Masculine Nouns with prefix Ge.

Gehalt contents, Gehorsam masculine
 Gesang, Gedanke thought, the gain Gewinn,
 the smell Geruch, Gestank, Geschmack, Genuß,
 Gefallen favour, der Gebrauch the use.

die Geberde the gesture	der Gedanke thought
die Gebühr the due	der Gefallen favour
die Geburt the birth	der Gehalt contents
die Geduld the patience	das Gehalt the salary
die Gefahr the danger	der Gehorsam the obedience
die Gemeinde the congregation	der Genuß the enjoyment
die Geschichte the history	der Geruch the smell
die Gestalt the figure	der Gesang the song
die Geschwulst the swelling	der Geschmack the taste
die Gewähr the guarantee	der Gestank the stench
die Gewalt the force, violence	der Gewinn the gain.
der Gebrauch the use	

**List of Nouns in which a difference of Gender
shows a difference of meaning.**

der Band volume pl. Bände	die Marſch fen, bog: Marſchen
daſ Band ribbon: Bänder	der Maſt maſt: Maſten
der Bauer peasant: Bauern	die Maſt fattening of animals
daſ Bauer cage: Bauer	der Menſch man, pl. Menſchen
der Bund pact, league Bünd- niffe	daſ Menſch wench: Menſcher
daſ Bund bundle, pl. Bündel	der Meſſer measurer: Meſſer
der Chör chorus: Chöre	daſ Meſſer knife: Meſſer
daſ Chör choir: Chöre	der Ohm for Oheim uncle
der Erbe heir: Erben	die Ohm pipe of wine, pl. Ohme
daſ Erbe inheritance: Erbtheile	der Reiſ rice no pl.
der Harz the Harz forest	daſ Reiſ ſprig, pl. Reiſer
daſ Harz roſin	der Schild ſhield: Schilde
der Heide heathen, pl. Heiden	daſ Schild ſign board pl. Schilder
die Heide heath: Heiden	der See lake: Seen
der Hut hat: Hüte	die See ſea
die Hut guardianship no pl.	der Sproſſe ſprout pl. Sproſſen
der Kaper the privateer, pl. Kaper	die Sproſſe ſtep of a ladder,
die Kaper caper: Kapern	die Steuer tax: Steuern
der Kiefer fin: Kiefer	daſ Steuer rudder: Ruder
die Kiefer fir: Kiefern	der Stift a peg crayon: Stifte
der Kunde customer: Kunden	daſ Stift an eccleſiaſtical foundation, pl. Stifter
die Kunde news: Nachrichten	der Thor fool: Thoren
der Leiter leader: Leiter	daſ Thor gate: Thore
die Leiter ladder: Leitern	der Verdienſt wages, no pl.
die Mark a Prussian province	daſ Verdienſt merit, pl. Ver- dienſte.
daſ Mark marrow	
der Marſch march, pl. Märſche	

The Weak Declension, die schwache Declination.

The Weak Declension comprehends:

1. All nouns ending in e whether masculine or feminine, except the words *der Käse* cheese, *der Kaffee* coffee, *der Thee* tea, *der Klee* clover, and some foreign neuter nouns.

2. The masculine and feminine monosyllables, given in two lists below, which may have originally ended in e, but which have lost it.

3. All feminine words of more syllables than one, namely: First, derivatives in *ei*, *ſchaft*, *ung*, *in*, *heit*, *keit*; Secondly, foreign feminines ending in *ät*, *ion*, *z*, *if*, *ie*, *ur*, which are mentioned afterwards; and Thirdly, feminines in *el* and *er* given at the end of the weak declension.

4. Appellatives of men derived from foreign languages, and known to be so by having the accent on the last syllable: e. g. *Philosoph*, *Student*, *Poet* &c.

General Rules for the Weak Declension.

In nouns in e and others feminine
which have more syllables than one, decline
by adding n (en) for all the cases through,
And never modify a, o, or u.

In singular, feminines are not declined;
in plural *niß* takes e, like other kind.

Decline appellatives of men
from foreign source by adding en;
Accent their last: *Jurist* *Juristen*,
Poet, *Student*, *Sophist*, *Sophisten*.

Some nouns have lost the final e we mention
And still are of this weak or new declension
Their gender's known from plural form — remember
That names of things, if weak, are feminine gender.

By learning their plurals, we learn that they are weak;
and, as all weak names of things are feminine, we can thus
infer their gender.

List I.

Weak Masculines.

Vorfahr, Menschen, Herren, Christen,
Grafen, Helden, Prinzen, Fürsten,
Hirten, Pfaffen, Schenken, Mohren,
Lumpen, Gecken, Narren, Thoren,
Burschen auch Genosß, Gesellen,
Finken, Dchsen, Bär, Rebellen.

der Bär the bear	der Graf the count	der Dchs the ox
der Bursch the young fellow	der Held the hero	der Pfaff the priest
der Christ the Christian	der Herr the lord, the gentleman	der Prinz the prince royal
der Fürst the prince reigning	der Hirt the shepherd	der Rebell the rebel
der Geck the fool	der Lump the scamp	der Schenk the cup- bearer
der Genosß the asso- der Gesell [ciate] the fellow workman	der Mohr the moor	der Vorfahr the an- cestor, predecessor.
	der Narr the fool	

Bursch, Hirt, Pfaff are more commonly written Bursche, Hirte, Pfaffe; Dchs or Dchse, Gesell or Geselle.

List II.

Weak Feminines.

Read across the break, left in the line, to show the rhyme.

The sorts die Arten,	Formen, Trachten ¹
Courses Fahrten,	yachts die Fachten,
Jagden hunts,	die Posten posts
Stirnen fronts	die Kosten costs ²
Schulden debts,	die Lasten loads
Frachten freights	die Bahnen roads
duties Pflichten,	dues Gebühren
strata Schichten,	doors die Thüren,
Marken bounds,	the traces Spuren,
when near to towns,	the fields are Fluren,
Baien bays	and also Buchten,
Gluth a blaze,	ravines die Schluchten,
Pastures Triften,	meadows Auen,
Writings Schriften,	women Frauen,

Numbers Zahlen,	crowds die Schaaren,
Torments Qualen,	risks Gefahren,
Welten ³ , Fluthen ⁴ ,	Wahl election,
Burgen, Wehren ⁵	for protection,
Deeds die Thaten,	battles Schlachten,
Seeds die Saaten,	Dhnmacht, machten ⁶ ,
Cures die Curen,	crafts die Listen,
Watches Uhren,	Zeiten, Fristen ⁷ .

1. shapes, costumes. 2. Die Kost food. 3. Welten worlds.
4. floods. 5. Burgen castles, Wehren defences. 6. Die Macht
power, pl. Mächte: but Dhnmacht swoon, and Vollmacht full
power, pl. Dhnmachten, and Vollmachten. 7. times, respites.

The Plural is rare in the following:

The brood die Brut, the guard die Wacht,
the toll die Mauth, the lease die Pacht,
the litter Streu, the weight die Wucht,
the spleen die Milz, die Ruhr, die Sucht,
the favour Gunst, the sight die Sicht,
the dowry die Mitgift, gout die Gicht.
caprice die Willführ, Pest the pest,
return die Rückkehr, Rest the rest.

Examples of the Weak Declension.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. der Knabe the boy	die Knaben the boys
Gen. des Knaben of the boy	der Knaben of the boys
Dat. dem Knaben to the boy	den Knaben to the boys
Acc. den Knaben the boy	die Knaben the boys.
Nom. die Tugend the virtue	die Tugenden the virtues
Gen. der Tugend of the virtue	der Tugenden of the virtues
Dat. der Tugend to the virtue	den Tugenden to the virtues
Acc. die Tugend the virtue	die Tugenden the virtues.
Nom. der Mensch the human being	die Menschen the human beings
Gen. des Menschen	der Menschen
Dat. dem Menschen	den Menschen
Acc. den Menschen	die Menschen.

Nom.	die Frau the woman	die Frauen the women
Gen.	der Frau of the woman	der Frauen of the women
Dat.	der Frau to the woman	den Frauen to the women
Acc.	die Frau the woman	die Frauen the women.

Nom.	die Insel the island	die Inseln the islands
Gen.	der Insel of the island	der Inseln of the islands
Dat.	der Insel to the island	den Inseln to the islands
Acc.	die Insel the island	die Inseln the islands.

List III.

Feminines ending in el and er.

These nouns in el and er have die:

Die Droffel¹, Hummel humble-bee,
 die Ammel blackbird, quail die Wachtel
 die Muschel shell-fish, shoulder Achsel,
 die Runzel wrinkle, Gurgel throat,
 die Brezel², Semmel (weißes Brod)³,
 die Nudel⁴, Tafel auch der Tisch,
 die Gabel fork, die Schüssel dish,
 Kartoffel⁵, Zwiebel⁶, Wurzel⁷ — roots,
 die Dattel⁸, Eichel⁹, Mandel¹⁰, — fruits,
 die Primel primrose Hasel¹¹, Mistel¹²,
 die Pappel poplar, thistle Distel,
 die Stoppel stubble, nettle Nessel,
 die Geißel scourge, the fetter Fessel,
 die Koppel leash, the hook die Angel,
 die Schaufel shovel, mangle Mangel,
 die Kurbel crank, die Kabel cable
 die Deichsel¹³, Striegel comb for stable,
 die Krämpel wool-card, Hackel hackle,
 die Kugel bullet, torch die Fackel,
 die Spindel distaff, reel die Haspel,
 die Sichel sickle, rasp die Raspel,
 die Schachtel box, die Nadel needle,
 die Trommel drum, the fiddle Fiedel,

die Klingel bell, the rattle Rassel,
 die Falbel founce, die Troddel tassel.
 die Schaufel, swing, the swath die Windel,
 die Insel island, shingle Schindel,
 die Staffel easel, fable Fabel,
 die Formel formula, Parabel.
 Die Regel rule, the primer Fibel,
 die Kanzel pulpit, bible Bibel,
 die Orgel organ, die Epistel,
 die Klausel clause, falsetto Fistel.
 Add Flitter, Wimpel, der und die¹⁴,
 die Sporteln perquisites — a fee.

1. The thrush. 2. cracknell. 3. small roll of white or
 wheaten bread. 4. vermicelli or balls of paste. 5. potatoe.
 6. onion. 7. root. 8. date. 9. acorn. 10. almond. 11. hazel.
 12. mistletoe. 13. pole of a carriage. 14. der or die Flitter tinsel,
 der or die Wimpel pennon. 15. Sporteln is used in the plural.

Die Ziffer, Letter, Nummer, Feder¹,
 die Fiber, Faser, Zaser, Ceder²,
 die Kiefer pine, the elm die Ruster,
 die Aber vein, the nostril Ruster,
 die Leber, Wimper lash of eye,
 die Muster oyster, Elster pie,
 die Ammer Otter, Biber, Natter³,
 die Schulter shoulder, Maser, Blatter⁴,
 die Halfter; lurking place die Lauer,
 die Marter torment, mourning Trauer,
 die Folter rack, the chamber Kammer⁵,
 die Klapper clapper, cramp die Klammer,
 die Kelter winepress, shed die Scheuer,
 die Butter butter, tax die Steuer,
 die Leiter ladder, wall die Mauer,
 die Schleuder sling, duration Dauer,
 die Vesper⁶, celebration Feier,
 guitar die Zither, Oper, Feier⁷.

1. Die Ziffer the cypher, die Letter the letter, printer's type,
 die Nummer the number, die Feder the pen. 2. The fibre die
 Fiber, the smaller filament die Faser and in nature's department
 die Zaser. Die Ceder the cedar. 3. Die Ammer (gold) hammer, die

Otter otter, die Viper viper, die Blatter the adder. 4. Die Maſer speck generally used in the plural die Maſern measles, so die Blatter poek die Blattern small pox. 5. Stube a room and Kammer a chamber without a stove, in common houses, correspond to Zimmer a room and Gemach an apartment, in wealthy houses. 6. Die Vesper vespers. 7. die Oper the opera, die Klapper the clapper, die Veier the lyre.

The Strong Declension, die starke Declination.

The Strong Declension makes the genitive case in *s* like the English possessive. Such a definition however does not inform the student what nouns belong to this declension, for he may naturally enquire what those substantives are, which make the genitive in *s*. But when he *has learned the monosyllables of the weak declension*, he knows that all others belong to the strong. The weak declension, as we have seen, comprehends (1) nouns in *e*, (2) two lists of monosyllables, which originally ended in *e*, (lists I and II), (3) all feminines of more syllables than one, and (4) all foreign appellatives of men having the accent on the last syllable. The Strong Declension comprehends *all the nouns that are not weak*.

General Rules for the Strong Declension.

The ancient strong declension comprehends the nouns — not weak — whose genitive like English ends

in *s*, and dative plural ends in *n*¹;

Class I. it adds no more to *el*, *en*, *er*, *lein*, *ſten*²;

Class II. but adds to other terminations *e*³, besides the *s* and *n*, for euphony, except in singular accusative, which always is the same as nominative⁴.

Most masculines modify *a*, *o* and *u*.

All feminines strong⁶, but none of neuters do⁷,

Class III. except the neuter plurals formed in er⁸.

Class IV. No feminine noun inflects the singular⁹.

Observations¹⁰.

1. Long syllables with liquid endings may, in genitive and dative singular drop e;
2. so nouns, whose last is unaccented, go, if one can easily pronounce them so;
3. and datives after prepositions too without the article, except with zu.

1. The Strong Declension forms the genitive singular in *s* and the dative plural in *n*; thus Vater Vaters (like English *father's*) Väter, Schiff Schiffes (Eng. *ship's*) Schiffe. 2. To the terminations *el*, *en*, *er*, *lein* and *chen*, nothing more is added, besides *s* in the genitive and *n* in the dative plural; 3. but in other words, *e* is added to the nominative to form the other cases, after which *e*, the regular *s* of the genitive and *n* of the dative plural come. 4. The accusative singular, however, is the same as the nominative. 5. Most masculines and 6. all feminines, when strong, modify *a*, *o*, *u* in the plural; 7. but no neuter modifies these vowels, 8. except those which form the plural by adding *r* after *e*, as Haus Häuser; Dorf Dörfer; Buch Bücher. In these words, accordingly, the terminations of the plural are *er*, *er*, *ern*, *er*. 9. Feminine nouns are not inflected in the singular.

10. These are more fully explained in page 24.

Examples of the Strong Form of Declension.

Class I.

Nouns ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, *lein*, *chen*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. der Vogel the bird	die Vögel the birds
Gen. des Vogels of the bird	der Vögel of the birds
Dat. dem Vogel to the bird	den Vögeln to the birds
Acc. den Vogel the bird	die Vögel the birds.
Nom. das Messer the knife	die Messer the knives.
Gen. des Messers	der Messer
Dat. dem Messer	den Messern
Acc. das Messer	die Messer.

Those which end in en do not take another n in the dative plural.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. der Knochen the bone	die Knochen
Gen. des Knochens of the bone	der Knochen
Dat. dem Knochen to the bone	den Knochen
Acc. den Knochen the bone	die Knochen.

Decline in the same way das Söhnchen *the little son*, das Kindlein *the baby*.

Two nouns, Mutter *mother*, and Tochter *daughter*, have this strong form in the plural, although they are feminines of more syllables than one. Their plurals are die Mütter, die Töchter, dative plural den Müttern, den Töchtern.

Class II.

Masculines and Neuters with other terminations.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. der Berg the mountain	die Berge the mountains
Gen. des Berges of the mountain	der Berge of the mountains
Dat. dem Berge to the mountain	den Bergen to the mountains
Acc. den Berg the mountain	die Berge the mountains.
Nom. das Schiff the ship	die Schiffe the ships
Gen. des Schiffes of the ship	der Schiffe of the ships
Dat. dem Schiffe to the ship	den Schiffen to the ships
Acc. das Schiff the ship	die Schiffe the ships.

Class III.

Neuters (and a few Masculines) forming the plural in er.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. das Dorf the village	die Dörfer the villages
Gen. des Dorfes	der Dörfer
Dat. dem Dorfe	den Dörfern
Acc. das Dorf	die Dörfer.

Class IV.

Feminines of the Strong Form.

Nom. die Hand the hand	die Hände the hands
Gen. der Hand of the hand	der Hände of the hands
Dat. der Hand in the hand	den Händen to the hands
Acc. die Hand the hand	die Hände the hands.

Observations.

Obs. 1. When the nominative case terminates in one of the liquids l, m, n, r, preceded by a long vowel, the e of the genitive and dative singular is generally left out; thus *des Throns, des Schwans; am Ziel, vom Stuhl.* But *des Stockes, des Bettes, dem Manne, auf dem Berge.*

Example.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. der Baum the tree	die Bäume the mountains.
Gen. des Baumes des Baums	der Bäume
Dat. dem Baume dem Baum	den Bäumen
Acc. den Baum	die Bäume

Obs. 2. In words of more than one syllable, when the last syllable is not the accented one, the e of the genitive singular is often omitted for the sake of euphony, unless the final consonants of the noun require the e in pronunciation. In such words the final e of the dative is often omitted likewise: thus, *des Monats, dem Monat,* of, to the month; *des Jünglings, dem Jüngling,* of, to the young man.

This rule applies also to compounds, for the first part of the word has the principal accent and the second a minor one. Thus *des Vorhangs, des Feiertags, des Handschuhs.*

Example.

Singular.	Plural
Nom. der König the king	die Könige the kings
Gen. des Königs	der Könige
Dat. dem König(e)	den Königen
Acc. den König	die Könige.

Obs. 3. The euphonic e is also omitted in the dative singular, when the noun is preceded by a preposition and at the same time is not qualified by the definite article or by an adjective. This is the case in phrases, as: *aus Haß* out of hatred; *mit Fleiß* on purpose; *mit Grund* with reason; but *mit gutem Grunde* with good reason. *Zu*, however, is excepted: as, *zu Grunde gehen* to perish; *zu Hause sein* to be at home.

Lists of Strong Substantives

showing in Rhyme at once their Meaning, Gender, and Declension, and grouping together words of like meaning.

Most nouns in German are masculine; a knowledge of gender is therefore most easily acquired by learning the the exceptions, that is, the lists of feminines and neuters. Accordingly these are given first. The order is as follows:

Feminines	forming the plural in e and modifying a, o, u.						
Neuters	forming the plural in er and modifying a, o, u.						
	forming the plural in e and not modifying a, o, u. neuters in el, en, er.						
Masculines	ending in el, en, er						
	forming the plural in e						
	<table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">modifying a, o, u.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">not modifg. a, o, u.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">{</td> <td style="padding-right: 5px;">not containing a, o, u.</td> </tr> </table>	{	modifying a, o, u.	{	not modifg. a, o, u.	{	not containing a, o, u.
{	modifying a, o, u.						
{	not modifg. a, o, u.						
{	not containing a, o, u.						

List IV.

Feminines of the Strong Declension.

The plurals of the feminines strong below have always modified a, u and o.

Observe that feminines with plural e are mostly roots with affix t or d.¹

The anguish	Angst, the breast	die Brust	die Angst, die Brust
	the plurals	Angste, Brüste	
The power	die Kraft, delight	die Lust	die Kraft, die Lust
	the plurals	Kräfte, Lüfte	
distress	die Noth, the night	die Nacht	die Noth, die Nacht
	the plurals	Nöthe, Nächte	
the fist	die Faust, the might	die Macht	die Faust, die Macht
	the plurals	Fäuste, Mächte	
the wall	die Wand, the air	die Luft	die Wand, die Luft
	the plurals	Wände, Lüfte	
the axe	die Art, the cleft	die Kluft	die Art, die Kluft
	the plurals	Aerte, Klüfte	

¹ Note. The pupil may read the list on the left hand, or, if he knows the meanings, learn the words on the right.

the town die Stadt, the guild die Zunft	die Stadt, die Zunft
the plural Städte, Zünfte	
the meeting die Zusammenkunft	Zusammenkunft
die Ein- Zusammen- fünfte	
the string die Schnur, the seam die Naht	die Schnur, die Naht
the plurals Schnüre Nähte	
die Bett- und Werkstatt compound Statt,	and compound
the plurals end in stätte	statt
Excuse die Ausflucht, Feuersbrunst	and flucht & brunst
the plurals flüchte brünste	
the hand die Hand, the art die Kunst	die Hand, die Kunst
the plurals Hände, Künste	
the sausage Wurst, the hide die Haut	die Wurst, die Haut
the plurals Würste, Häute	
the girl die Magd, the bride die Braut	die Magd, die Braut
the plurals Mägde, Bräute.	
Some names of beasts, die Kuh the cow	die Kuh the cow
the plural Kühe cows	
die Sau makes Säue common sow,	die Sau the sow
with sportsmen Sauen sows	
The goat die Geiß, the mouse die Maus	die Geiß, die Maus
the plurals Geiße, Mäuse	
the goose die Gans, the louse die Laus	die Gans, die Laus
the plurals Gänse, Läuse	
the nut die Nuß, the fruit die Frucht,	die Nuß, die Frucht
the plurals Nüsse, Früchte	
the grave die Gruft, the race die Zucht	die Gruft, die Zucht
the plurals Gräfte Züchte	
No plural form of feminine	race, discipline
in Hast the haste, the pain die Pein	die Hast, die Pein
care Acht, the ornament die Zier	die Acht, die Zier
the splendour Pracht, the greed die Gier	die Pracht, die Gier
the shame die Scham, the rage die Wuth	die Scham, die Wuth
disgrace die Schmach, the heed die Huth	die Schmach, die Huth
the fear die Furcht, the shyness Scheu	die Furcht, die Scheu
the milk die Milch, the chaff die Spreu	die Milch, die Spreu

List V.

Neuters and a few Masculines

which form the plural in er.

Most nouns are neuter which have plural end er,

Thus er in plural marks their neuter gender.

With plural er we modify a, u and o;

Derivatives in thum make plural so.

Neuter: Gelder, Güter, Pfänder,	moneys, estates, pledges,
Dörfer, Felder, Thäler, Länder,	villages, fields, valleys, lands,
Häuser, Schlösser, Aemter, Dächer,	houses, castles, offices, roofs,
Gemächer, Hospitäler, Fächer,	apartments — compartments,
Löcher, Gräber, Fässer, Bäder,	holes, grains, casks, baths,
Nester, Eier, Gläser, Räder,	nests, eggs, glasses, wheels,
Schwerdter, Regimenter, Bänder,	swords, regiments, ribbons,
Wämser, Tücher, Kleid, Gewänder,	doublets, cloths, garments.
Lieder, Wörter, Bücher, Bilder,	songs, words, books, pictures,
Denk- und Grabmal =mäler,	monuments, sign-boards,
Schilder,	
Hölzer, Reiser, Trümmer, Bretter,	pieces of wood, twigs, ruins, boards,
Kräuter, Gräser, Körner, Blätter,	herbs, grasses, grains, leaves,
Geschlechter, Völker, Weiber,	species, peoples, wives,
Kinder,	children,
Hühner, Lämmer, Kälber, Rinder,	fowls, lambs, calves, oxen,
Geipenst, Gemüther, Augenlider,	spectre, minds, eye-lids,
Mäuler, Hörner, Häupter, Glieder,	mouths, horns, heads, limbs,
Gesichter faces, sights Gesichte,	
Lichter lights, but candles Lichte.	
The following are of masculine	
gender:	
Leiber, Würmer, Wälder, Ränder,	bodies, worms, forests, brinks,
Vormund, Männer, Geister, Götter	guardian, men, spirits, gods,
Bösewichter, Hundsfott =fötter,	villains, cowardly rascals.

Small places Derter, larger Orte,
for words combined in speech die Worte,
die Bände volumes, bonds die Bande,
tracts of land — poetic Lande.

List VI.

Neuters which form their Plural in e.

The neuter primaries below
take e and leave a, u and o.
But add no e to those in en, el, er:
nor when the sense is only singular.¹

Words meaning mass or stuff are neuter:
as, Leder, Fett, das Heu, das Futter.

the straw	das Stroh,	the truss	das Bund	das Stroh, das Bund
the foliage	Laub,	the moss	das Moos	das Laub, das Moos
the hogshead	Orhoft,	pound	das Pfund	das Orhoft, Pfund
the quart	das Quart,	the gross	das Groß	das Quart, das Groß
the dozen	Duzend,	pair	das Paar	das Duzend, Paar
the pint	das Seidel,	measure	Malter	das Seidel, Malter
das Schock	or threescore,	year	das Jahr	das Schock, das Jahr
the ace	das Aß,	the age	das Alter	das Aß, das Alter
the ream of paper,	Rieß Papier,			das Rieß Papier
the bread	das Brod,	the meal	das Mehl	das Brod, das Mehl
the malt	das Malz,	the beer	das Bier	das Malz, das Bier
the marmalade	Mus,	the oil	das Del	das Mus, das Del
the flesh	das Fleisch,	the blood	das Blut,	das Fleisch, das Blut
the marrow	Mark,	the lard	das Schmalz	das Mark, das Schmalz,
and when from trees	das Obst	the fruit		das Obst the fruit
the ore	das Erz,	the salt	das Salz	das Erz, das Salz
the brain	das Hirn,	the hair	das Haar	das Hirn, das Haar
the udder	Euter,	carrion	Euder	das Euter, Euder
the tow	das Werg,	the yarn	das Garn	das Werg, das Garn
the offering	Opfer,	load	das Fuder	das Opfer, Fuder
the gear	das Zeug,	the plate	das Blech	das Zeug, das Blech
the wax	das Wachs,	the solder	Loth	das Wachs, das Loth
the resin	Harz,	the pitch	das Pech	das Harz, das Pech
the powder	Pulver,	shot	das Schrot	das Pulver, Schrot

¹ The pupil may read the list on the right hand, or, if he knows the meanings, learn the words on the right.

the water	Wasser, wet	das Naß	das Wasser, Naß
the ice	das Eis,	the gas	das Gas.
			das Eis, das Gas.

To these add metals, names of towns,
some common and some abstract nouns :

Das Fenster window, Gitter grate,
das Polster cushion, Thor the gate,

the tent	das Zelt,	the case	Besteck	das Zelt, Versteck
the room	das Zimmer,	fire	das Feuer	das Zimmer, Feuer
the deck of ship	das Deck,	Verdeck		das Deck, Verdeck
the oar	das Ruder,	rudder	Steuer	das Ruder, Steuer
the sail	das Segel,	ship	das Schiff	das Segel, Schiff
the weather	Wetter,	sea	das Meer	das Wetter, Meer
the wreck	das Wrack,	the reef	das Riff	das Wrack, das Riff
the brink	das Ufer,	dam	das Wehr	das Ufer, Wehr
the wharf	das Werft,	the bay	das Haff	das Werft, das Haff
the boat	das Boot,	the float	das Floß	das Boot, das Floß
the roe	das Reh,	the sheep	das Schaf	das Reh, das Schaf
the horse	das Pferd,	the steed	das Roß	das Pferd, das Roß
the countenance	Antlig,	leg	das Bein	das Antlig, Bein
the chin	das Kinn,	the knee	das Knie	das Kinn, das Knie
das Ferkel	farrow,	pig	das Schwein	das Ferkel, Schwein
the game	das Wild	the beast	das Vieh	das Wild, das Vieh
the weasel	Wiesel,	wild beast	Thier	das Wiesel, Thier
das Rudel	means	the herd of deer		das Rudel deer.

The cage	das Bauer,	net	das Netz	das Bauer, Netz
the cable	Tau,	the rope	das Seil	das Tau, das Seil
the seal	das Siegel,	signet	Petschaft	das Siegel, Petschaft
the knife	das Messer,	hatchet	Beil	Messer, Beil
the yoke	das Joch,	the rivet	Niet	das Joch, das Niet
the reed	das Schilf,	the cane	das Rohr	das Schilf, das Rohr
the log	das Scheit,	the reed	das Rieth	das Scheit, das Rieth
the flowerbed	Beet,	the moor	das Moor	das Beet, das Moor
the hide	das Fell,	the fleece	das Wließ	das Fell, das Wließ
the boddice	Mieder,	pavement	Pflaster	das Mieder, Pflaster
the cross	das Kreuz,	the keep	Verließ	das Kreuz, Verließ
the misery	Glend,	sin	das Laster	das Glend, Laster

the fever Fieber, poison Gift	das Fieber, Gift
the interdict Verbot, Verhör	Verbot, Verhör
the fief das Lehn, foundation Stift	das Lehn, das Stift
the sieve das Sieb, the eye (of needle) das Dehr	das Sieb, das Dehr
the heft das Heft, the piece das Stück	das Heft, das Stück
the feast das Fest, the meal das Mehl	das Fest, das Mahl
the lot das Loos, the fortune Glück	das Loos, das Glück
the kingdom Reich, the universe das All	das Reich, das All
the welfare Wohl, the army Heer,	das Wohl, das Heer
the pack der Pack, das Pack the mob	das Pack the mob
salvation Heil, desire Begehr,	das Heil, Begehr
the right das Recht, the praise das Lob	das Recht, das Lob
the pattern Muster, mark das Merk	das Muster, Merk
the measure Maß, the aim das Ziel	das Maß, das Ziel
the thing das Ding, the work das Werk	das Ding, das Werk
the wonder Wunder, play das Spiel	das Wunder, Spiel
Almsosen charity or alms	Almsosen alms
the sheet das Laken, cushion Kissen	das Laken, Kissen
das Wappen means a coat of arms	das Wappen arms
the sign das Zeichen, knowledge Wissen	das Zeichen, Wissen

das Füllen, Fohlen colt, das Becken basin,
Some old infinitives: existence Wesen,
das Leben life, Behagen or delight,
Bergnügen pleasure, but der Schrecken fright.

List VII.

Masculines in el, er, en which modify a, o, u.

When masculines end in el, er and en,
these plurals modify the vowels then
Aecker, Gärten, Böden, Häfen
Hämmer, Nägel, Gräben, Defen,
Hämmel, Vögel, Mägen, Schnäbel.
Väter, Brüder, Schwäger, Näbel,

Apfel, Mäntel, Sättel, Fäden,
 Händel quarrels, Mägen, Schäden }
 Laden shutters, shops is Läden. }
 Two: die Klöster, Läger neuter,
 two are feminine: Töchter, Mütter.

Der Acker the ploughed field,	der Magen the stomach,
der Apfel the apple,	der Mangel the deficiency,
der Boden the bottom, loft,	der Mantel the mantle, cloak,
der Bruder the brother,	der Nabel the navel,
der Faden the thread,	der Nagel the nail,
der Garten the garden,	der Ofen the stove, oven,
der Graben the ditch,	der Sattel the saddle,
der Hafen the harbour,	der Schaden the damage,
der Hammel the wether, mutton,	der Schnabel the beak,
der Hammer the hammer,	der Schwager the brother in
der Laden the shop,	der Vater the father, [law]
die Laden shutters,	der Vogel the bird,
die Läden shops.	

Feminines:	Neuter:
die Mutter the mother,	das Lager the camp,
die Tochter the daughter,	das Kloster the cloister.

List VIII.

**Masculines Monosyllables which modify
a, o and u in the plural.**

The masculine substantives in list below
in plural modify a, u and o.

The Plurals.

The branch der Ast, the tree der Baum,	Aeste, Bäume,
the ground der Grund, the space der Raum,	Gründe, Räume,
the court der Hof, saloon der Saal,	Höfe, Säle,
the hedge der Zaun, the pale der Pfahl,	Zäune, Pfähle,

Note. The pupil may read the whole line across, repeating *the plurals* in the middle of each line, or, if he knows the meanings, he may learn the words on the right.

der Herzog varies plural, duke,	Herzog, =zöge,
adviser Rath, der Koch the cook,	Räthe, Köche,
the ninny Tropf, the wag der Schalk,	Tropfe, Schälke,
the son der Sohn, the brat der Balg,	Söhne, Bälge,
the buck der Bock, the swan der Schwan,	Böcke, Schwäne,
the stork der Storch, the cock der Hahn,	Störche, Hähne,
the wolf der Wolf, the fox der Fuchs,	Wölfe, Füchse,
the frog der Frosch, the growth der Wuchs,	Frösche, Wüchse,
the comb der Kamm, the head der Kopf,	Kämme, Köpfe,
the tail der Schwanz, the pigtail Zopf,	Schwänze, Zöpfe,
the rump der Rumpf, the foot der Fuß,	Rümpfe, Füße,
the neck der Hals, the kiss der Kuß,	Hälse, Küsse,
the beard der Bart, the tuft der Schopf,	Bärte, Schöpfe,
the belly Bauch, the crop der Kropf,	Bäuche, Kröpfe,
the paunch der Wanst, the gullet Schlund,	Wänste, Schlünde,
with plural rare, the mouth der Mund,	Münder, Münde,
the tooth der Zahn, the gut der Darm,	Zähne, (Ge-) Därme
the flea der Floh, the swarm der Schwarm,	Flöhe, Schwärme.

The course der Lauf, the flight der Flug,	Läufe, Flüge,
the throw der Wurf, procession Zug,	Würfe, Züge,
the spring der Sprung, the walk der Gang,	Sprünge, Gänge,
the blow der Schlag, constraint der Zwang,	Schläge, Zwänge,
the downfall Sturz, the fraction Bruch,	Stürze, Brüche,
the perfume Duft, the smell Geruch,	Düfte, Gerüche,
the use der Brauch, the end der Schluß,	Bräuche, Schlüsse,
the swing der Schwung, the shot der Schuß,	Schwünge, Schüsse,
the march der Marsch, the station Stand,	Märste, Stände,
the case, der Fall, the firebrand Brand,	Fälle, Brände.
in plural Ranf, the fight der Kampf,	Ränke, Kämpfe,
the curse der Fluch, the cramp der Krampf,	Flüche, Krämpfe,
the theft der Diebstahl, prank der Schwank,	stähle, Schwänke,
debauch der Rausch, the drink der Trank,	Räusche, Tränke,
the wish der Wunsch, the push der Stoß,	Wünsche, Stöße,
the feast der Schmaus, the dumpling	Schmäuse, Klöße,

Kloß,

Schmäuse, Klöße,

The Plurals.

the ball der Ball, the garland Kranz,	Bälle, Kränze,
the choir der Chor, the dance der Tanz,	Chöre, Tänze,
the tone der Ton, the sound der Klang,	Töne, Klänge,
the dream der Traum, the song der Sang,	Träume, Sänge,
the tax der Zoll, the passport Paß,	Zölle, Pässe,
the saying Spruch, the joke der Spaß,	Sprüche, Späße,
the oâth der Schwur, the sentence Satz,	Schwüre, Sätze,
the purchase Kauf, the treasure Schatz,	Käufe, Schätze,
Genuß enjoyment, greeting Gruß,	Genüsse, Grüße,
the dram der Schnapps, chagrin Verdruß,	auch Verdrüsse,
the shove der Schub, the catch der Fang,	Schübe, Fänge,
the compound nouns in laß and hang,	lässe, hänge,
and those in druck, and trag, and wand,	träge, wände,
as, Abdruck, Ausdruck, volume Band,	drücke, Bände.

List IX.

**Masculines with a, o and u not modified
in the plural.**

The vowel's unchanged, when one declines
The plural of these masculines:

The dog der Hund, the eagle Har,	der Hund, der Har
the plurals Hunde, Hare	
the lapwing Wiedehopf, der Staar,	der Wiedehopf, der
the plural starlings Staare	Staar
the lynx der Luchs, the badger Dachs,	der Luchs, der Dachs
die Luchse, Luchse, Dachsje	
the haddock Dorsch, the salmon Lachs,	der Dorsch, der Lachs
die Dorsche, Lächse, Lachsje.	
Eel Aal, the salamander Molch	der Aal, der Molch
the anvil Amboß, dagger Dolch	der Amboß, Dolch
the matter Stoff, the grain der Gran,	der Stoff, der Gran
the hoe der Karst, the crane der Krahn,	der Karst, der Krahn
the dome der Dom, the building Bau	der Dom, der Bau
the barricade Berhäck, Berhau	Berhäck, Berhau
the blade der Halm, the turf der Torf,	der Halm, der Torf
the spar der Spath, the scurf der Schorf	der Spath, der Schorf

the wick der Docht, the inch der Zoll	der Doldch, der Zoll
the moon der Mond, the pole der Pol	der Mond, der Pol
the park der Park, the hedge der Hag	der Park, der Hag
the month der Monat, day der Tag	der Monat, Tag
the point der Punkt, the tact der Tact	der Punkt, der Tact
the split der Spalt, the act der Akt	der Spalt, der Akt
the pit der Schacht, the shaft der Schaft	der Schacht, der Schaft
the loss Verlust, arrest Verhaft	Verlust, Verhaft
the girdle Gurt, degree der Grad	der Gurt, der Grad
the shoe der Schuh, the path der Pfad	der Schuh, der Pfad
the cork der Kork, the board der Bord	der Kork, der Bord
the corpse der Leichnam, murder Mord	der Leichnam, Mord ¹
the arm der Arm, the hoof der Huf	der Arm, der Huf
the breath der Hauch, the call der Ruf	der Hauch, der Ruf
the pulse der Puls, the gulp der Schluck	der Puls, der Schluck
success Erfolg, the print der Druck	Erfolg, der Druck
the crack der Krach, the sound der Schall	der Krach, der Schall
when human Laut, when sudden Knall	der Laut, der Knall
the echo Nach- und Wiederhall,	der Wiederhall
the goblin Kobold, Trunkenbold	compounded bold
Besuch, Versuch and one in hold	and such and hold

der Unhold, Herold, Vielfraß, Schuft, Gemahl².

Zwei: Anwalt, Herzog schwanken im Plural.

No plural with der Ruhm renown, as usual with an abstract noun,	The following have no plural.
the pay der Sold, the wages Lohn	der Sold, der Lohn
resentment Groll, the scorn der Hohn	der Groll, der Hohn
the bann der Bann, the right der Fug	der Bann, der Fug
suspicion Argwohn, lie der Lug	der Argwohn, Lug
the strand der Strand, the poppy Mohn	der Strand, der Mohn
the cabbage Kohl, the clay der Thon	der Kohl, der Thon

1. plural Mordthaten. 2. monster, herald, glutton, villain, husband. 3. Anwalte or Anwältle attorneys, Herzoge or Herzöge dukes.

the spoil der Raub, deceit Betrug	der Raub, Betrug
Verdacht suspicion, quarrel Zank,	Verdacht, der Zank
Bedacht, Betracht, the thanks der Dank	Bedacht, der Dank
the dust der Staub, the trash der Tand	der Staub, der Tand
Verdruß, intelligence Verstand	Verdruß, Verstand
the dirt der Schmuß, the mud der	der Schmuß, der
	Schlamm Schlamm
the death der Tod, the grief der Gram	der Tod, der Gram
exchange der Tausch, the trade der Kram	der Tausch, der Kram
advice der Rath, the comfort Trost	der Rath, der Trost
the thirst der Durst, the rust der Rost	der Durst, der Rost
der Wahn, delusion, Bund, der Schuß	der Wahn, der Schuß
der Schmuck the ornament, der Fuß	der Schmuck, der
	Fuß

The plural of other substantives is sometimes used instead: thus Bündnisse, Bedrückungen, Befugnisse, Belohnungen, Bekümmernisse, Betrügereien, Dankjagungen, Kohlköpfe, Lobeserhebungen, Rathsverjammlungen, Rathschläge, Austauschungen, Todesfälle, Tröstungen, Verständnisse, Zänkereien.

The Mixed Declension (partly weak, partly strong),

Class I. The plurals of the following nouns belong to weak declension, singulars to strong:
 das Ende — Enden, Leid the pain,
 das Bett, das Hemd, give plural e n
 das Auge — Augen, Ohr — die Ohren,
 der Dorn, der Stachel, Sporn — die Sporen,
 der Zierrath, Lorbeer, Strahl the ray,
 Geratter, Better, Mast, der See.

Class II. The singular varies in der Unterthan,
 Spatz, Bauer, Nachbar, Kaffer, Ungar, Ahn.

Class III. The plural's mostly weak in Pfau
 der Thron, der Stiefel, Forst, der Zins, der Gau.

Class IV. Some nouns decline from en, yet may

drop n in nominative, and so have e:

der Buchstabe, Gedanke, Wille, Name,

der Friede, Glaube, Funke, Haufe, Same,

der Schade — Schäden, Fels — den Fels, das Herz,

der Schmerz, des Schmerzes Schmerzens, Schmerze, Schmerz.

Singular.

Nom. das Ohr <i>the ear</i>	der Spatz <i>the sparrow</i>	der Funke <i>the spark</i>
Gen. des Ohres	des Spases or Spasen	des Funkens
Dat. dem Ohre	dem Spaz or Spasen	dem Funken
Acc. das Ohr	den Spaz or Spasen	den Funken

Plural: Ohren, Spasen, Funken throughout.

Singular.

Nom. der Fels <i>the rock</i>	das Herz <i>the heart</i>	der Schmerz <i>the pain</i>
Gen. des Felsens	des Herzens	des Schmerzes, -zens
Dat. dem Felsen	dem Herzen	dem Schmerze
Acc. den Fels or Felsen	das Herz	den Schmerz.

Plural: Felsen, Herzen, Schmerzen throughout.

List X.

Nouns of the Mixed Declension: Cl. I, II, III.

der Ahn <i>the ancestor</i>	das Leid <i>the sorrow</i>	das Stück <i>the piece</i>
das Auge <i>the eye</i>	der Lorbeer <i>the laurel</i>	die Stücke <i>the pieces</i>
der Bauer <i>the peasant</i> †	der Mast <i>the mast</i>	die Stücken <i>the fragments?</i>
der Dorn <i>the thorn</i> **	der Nachbar <i>the neighbour</i> †	der Thron <i>the throne</i> *
das Ende <i>the end</i>	das Ohr <i>the ear</i>	der Ungar <i>the Hungarian</i> †
das Erbe <i>the inheritance</i>	der Pfau <i>the peacock</i>	der Unterthan <i>the subject</i>
der Forst <i>the forest</i> *	der Schmerz <i>the pain</i>	der Vetter <i>the cousin</i>
der Gau <i>the district</i> *	der See <i>the lake</i>	das Weh <i>woe pain,</i>
der Gevatter <i>the godfather</i>	der Sporn <i>the spur</i> ††	die Wehe <i>med.</i>
das Hemd <i>the shirt</i> **	der Spaz <i>the spar-row</i> †	pl. die Wehen
das Interesse <i>the interest</i>	der Stachel <i>the sting</i>	der Zierrath <i>the ornament</i>
der Kaffer <i>the Caffre</i> †	der Stiefel <i>the boot</i> *	der Zins <i>the interest.</i>
	der Strahl <i>the beam.</i>	

† Those marked † have sometimes also a weak form in the singular.

* Those marked * have both the weak and the strong forms in the plural.

†† Sporn. Gen: Spornes or Sporns, plural Sporen.

** Hemden in the only form written; die Hemder is frequently heard in common life. Dörne and Dörner occur, but not in literature.

Class IV.

Nouns forming the Nominative in *en* or *e*.

der Buchstabe the letter of	der Glaube faith,
the alphabet,	der Haufen the heap,
der Felsen rock or cliff,	der Haufe the multitude,
der Fels rock	das Herz the heart,
der Frieden peace,	der Name the name,
der Friede peace,	der Samen the seed
der Funken spark of fire,	der Same the seed
der Funke spark	der Schaden the injury
der Gedanken thought	der Schade the injury
der Gedanke idea	der Wille the will.

It is more common to drop *n* the nominative case; as is always done with *der Glaube*, *der Name* and *der Wille*. *Herz*, *Fels* and *Schmerz*, are given in this list, because they follow more or less the same model.

List XI.

Nouns which have different Plural forms according to the meaning.

der Band volume pl. Bände,	der Strauß bouquet: Sträuße,
das Band tie pl. Bände,	der Strauß ostrich: Strauße,
das Band ribbon: Bänder,	die Sau dom. sow: Säue,
die Bank bench: Bänke,	die Sau wild sow: Sauen,
die Bank bank: Banken,	das Thal valley: Thäler,
das Gesicht face: Gesichter,	poetical pl. Thale,
das Gesicht vision: Gesichte,	das Wort word } pl. Worte,
der Laden shutter: Läden,	combined in speech }
der Laden shop: Läden,	das Wort word } pl. Wörter,
das Land country: Länder	taken by itself }
tracts of land, poet: Lande [as	der Zoll inch: Zolle,
Niederlande]	der Zoll revenue: Zölle.

List XII.

Nouns used only in the plural.

die Beinkleider or Hosen	trowsers,	die Molken	whey,
die Brieffchaften	papers, letters	die Ränke	intrigues,
die Einkünfte	revenue,	die Schranken	bounds,
die Eltern	parents,	die Sporteln	fees,
die Fußstapfen	footsteps,	die Treber	lees.
die Gebrüder	brothers,	die Trümmer	ruins,
die Geschwister	brothers & sisters	die Truppen	troops, [(rare)
die Gefälle	rents,	die Zeitläufte	occurrences
die Gliedmaßen	limbs,	die Fasten	lent,
die Hefen	yeast,	die Ferien	vacation, holidays,
die Kosten, Unkosten	expenses,	die Oftern	Easter,
die Leute	people,	die Pfingsten	Whitsuntide,
die Mafern	measles,	die Weihnachten	Christmas.

List XIII.

**The following words are plural in English
and singular in German.**

die Asche	ashes,	der Lohn	wages,
das Billard	billiards,	die Lunge	lungs,
die Brille	spectacles,	die Mathematik	mathematics,
der Dank	thanks,	die Mechanik	mechanics,
das Gemüse	vegetables,	die Optik	optics, &c,
der Hader	bickerings,	die Nische	shelves for books,
der Hafer	oats,	die Schere	scissors,
der Hopfen	hops,	das Unkraut	weeds,
die Kaserne	barracks,	die Zange	tongs,
die Lichtputze	snuffers,	das Zeug	tools,
die Lende	loins,	der Zirkel	pair of compasses.

Foreign Nouns.

General Rules for the Gender.

The gender of a foreign name remains in German still the same; but endings have an influence upon the genders, so the sense: most foreign nouns in *el* and *er* are masculine, as others were, *der Münster, Tempel, Zucker* come from Latin neuter nouns in *um*. *L, M* and *T* (not *ant* or *ast*²) are neuter, when the accent's last³; but names of stones, as *der Opal*, are masculine, as in general. So all from classic *os* and *us* are masculine: *der Pontifus*⁴.

ät, ur, ion, ð, ie and *if* are feminine endings, always weak⁵.

1. The words in *el, er* and *en* are as a rule masculine, the exceptions, whether of German or foreign origin, were given in the list III above, or will be given in an appendix.

2. Nouns in *ant* and *ast* are masculine: *as, der Diamant, der Palast &c.* So are names of stones, and others: *as, der Opal*.

3. Names of things in *l* (*al* or *all, il* or *ill, ol* or *oll*) and in *m*, are neuter: *as, das Metall, das Fossil, das Pistol*. Names of things in *t* (*at, cept, ect, ent, ert, et* or *elt, ult, ipt, ft, uct, ut, yt*) are neuter: *as, das Konsulat, das Element, das Pergament, das Bilet, das Kabinet, das Interdikt, das Product, das Attribut &c.*)

4. Nouns derived from classical words ending in *us* and *os* are masculine though the original words are sometimes feminine: thus, *der Diphthong* the diphthong, *der Pontifus* the portico, *der Instinkt* the instinct.

5. Examples of these feminine endings: *die Majestät* the majesty, *die Portion* the portion, *die Jurisprudenz*, *die Miliz*, *die Politif*, *die Optif*, *die Familie* (4 syl.), *die Melodie* (3 syl), *die Statur* the stature (except *der Purpur*).

I. Weak Declension.

Decline appellatives of men from foreign source by adding en: der Demagog, des Demagogen; der Theolog des Theologen. And masculines in graph and ant, der Ductient, der Consonant, der Nerv, Planet, Komet take en. although they are not names of men.

II. Strong Declension.

The foreign names of things decline, as strong, except the feminine; and names of men in ier and en are strong: as, Offizier, Patron, as well as those in al, ar, an; as Commissar, Notar, Kaplan, so Magistrat, Legat, Major with or accented, Matador. Some modify, in plural, al: so terms ecclesiastical: Bischöfe, Päpste, Kardinäle die Generale, Generäle. So Aebte, Pröbste, Bogt, Paläste, Altar, Choral, Kanal, Moräste, das Arjenal, das Tribunal take ale; but das Kapital makes Kapitälcr, meaning pillarhead: in commerce, Kapitalien is said.

III. Mixed Declension.

The nouns in unaccented er belong to weak in plural, singulars to strong: der Doctor, Doctors, die Doctoren, so the following of mixed declension go: das Verb, Prenom, Statut, Injekt, der Diamant, Rubin, Juwel, Gfäfft.¹

Pantoffel, Muskel, Psalm, Traktat,
Tribun, Triumvir, Präfect, Konjul, Staat,
der Papagei, Fajan, Import, Aspekten,
das Interesse, Ferien, Pandekten,
das Möbel Möbeln or Mobilien,
die Ehepacten, die Auspizien.
al, il for ale, ile take icn
Regal, Fossil, Reptil, Reptilien,

1. Effekte means effects consequences, Effekten effects, goods.

IV. Nouns retaining the Greek and Latin Terminations.

The ancient singulars remain
of nouns in ma, is, us and en.
To is and us of nominative
add nothing in the genitive.
Some keep their plurals: Omina
die Kasus, Modi, Tempora:
more frequently their plurals come
in en, by dropping a, us, um:
as Dogmen, Anglicismen, Studien,
Adverb, Adverbium, Adverbien,
Lyceum, Individuum, Museum,
change um to en, and so does Jubiläum.
But nouns in tivum — Substantivum — give
the plural tive formed from Substantiv.

Ancient Foreign nouns ending in s as Kasus case, Modus mood, Tempus time, Crisis crisis, Cultus worship, remain the same throughout the singular. In the others, s is added in the genitive: as, Individuum s, Ominu s. The ancient plurals are sometimes retained: as, Kasus, Modi, Tempora, Omina; but more frequently the German termination en is added after dropping the singular terminations a, us, um; thus Dogma, Anglicismus, Studium, make their plurals Dogmen, Anglicismen, Studien. But nouns in tivum as Substantivum, form the plural in e, as Substantive.

V. Nouns adopted from Modern Languages.

To nouns from modern sources give
apostrophe in genitive
of singular; the plural has
the s throughout: as, die Sophas,
die Fonds, die Puddings, Klubbs, Genies,
Kasinos, Solos, Kolibris.

Foreign Nouns.

Strong Declension.

der Abt the abbot,
der Altar the altar,
das Arsenal the arsenal,
die Auspizien the auspices,
der Bischof the bishop,
der Choral the choral, [sioner,
der Commissar the commis-
der General the general,
der Kanal the canal,
der Kardinal the cardinal,
der Legat the legate,
der Magistrat the magistrate,
der Major the major,
der Matador the matadore,
der Morast the morass,
der Notar the notary,
der Papst the pope,
der Palast the palace,
der Probst the provost,
das Tribunal the tribunal,
der Vicar the vicar,
der Vogt the bailiff.

Weak Declension.

der Consonant the consonant,
der Komet the comet,

der Planet the planet,
der Nerv the nerve,
der Quotient the quotient,
der Paragraph,
der Lithograph,
der Foliant the folio, volume,
der Quadrant.

Mixed Declension.

das Adverb the adverb,
die Aspekte the appearances,
der Diamant the diamond,
der Doctor the doctor,
das Dogma the dogma,
die Effecten the effects, [tracts,
die Ehepaften marriage con-
der Fasan the pheasant,
die Ferien the holidays,
das Fossil the fossil,
der Import the import,
das Individuum individual,
das Insekt the insect,
das Interesse the interest,
der Juwel the jewel,
der Konsul the consul,
das Lyceum the lyceum,
das Möbel piece of furniture,

das Museum the museum,	der Rubin the ruby,
der Muskel the muscle,	der Staat the state,
der Offizier the officer,	das Statut the statute,
der Pantoffel the slipper,	das Studium the study,
das Pronom the pronoun,	der Traktat the treatise,
der Präfect the prefect,	der Transport the transport,
der Psalm the psalm,	der Tribun the tribune,
das Regal pl. the regalia,	der Triumvir the triumvir,
das Reptil the reptile,	das Verb the verb.

Declension of Proper Names.

A proper name adds *s* in genitive, unless the final sound of nominative be *s* already, or the feminine *e*; we then add *ens* for genitive and say *Sophiens Bruder, Frißens Buch*, and when the nominative is *e*, give dative *en*; or use the article to show the case, or *von* especially with a name of place, when such already ends in *z* or *s*:
des Heinrich, von Paris, des Socrates.

When some appellative precedes the person, thing, inflect the word that's next the governing:
*der Thron des Kaisers Karl, but Kaiser Karl's Thron, das Buch des armen Heinrich but des Lord Byron.*¹
 When title follows, each declines:
as, Karl's des Großen Charlemagne's.

¹ The English titles Earl and Lord are not inflected.

Examples.

Nom. Ludwig Lewis	Friß Frederick
Gen. Ludwigs or des Ludwig	Frißens or des Friß
Dat. Ludwig or dem Ludwig	Friß or dem Friß
Acc. Ludwig or den Ludwig.	Friß or den Friß.
Nom. Luise Louisa	Socrates
Gen. Luizens or der Luise	des Socrates
Dat. Luisen or der Luise	mit Socrates or dem Socrates
Acc. Luise or die Luise	Socrates or den Socrates.

Nom. Karl der Große, Charles the great, Charlemagne
 Gen. Karl's des Großen, of Charlemagne
 Dat. Karl dem Großen, to Charlemagne
 Acc. Karl den Großen, Charlemagne.

Adjectives, Eigenschaftswörter.

Adjectives are words used to qualify substantives. They are used either attributively (beifügend) or predicatively (ausfägend).

In the sentence *my friend is good*, *good* is the predicate; in the sentence *my good friend*, *good* is an attribute.

When an adjective is used as the predicate, it is not declined in German; when it is an attribute, it follows both the weak and the strong forms of declension.

I. Adjectives used attributively, and not preceded by an inflected article or pronoun, are declined like the definite article.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.		All genders.
Sing. Nom.	guter	gute	gutes	Plural	gute
Gen.	gutes	güter	gutes		guter
Dat.	gutem	guter	gutem		guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gutes		gute.

In this manner is declined:

rother Wein, rothen Weines, rothem Weine, rothen Wein;
 reife Frucht, reifer Frucht, reifer Frucht, reife Frucht;
 weißes Brod, weißen Brodes, weißem Brode, weißes Brod;
 reiche Männer, reicher Männer, reichen Männern, reiche Männer.
 English: red wine, ripe fruit, white bread, rich men.

II. An adjective preceded by the definite article,
 or by dieser this, jener that, or any other pronoun or indefinite numeral, which has the same terminations as these, takes *e* in the nominative sing. and *en* in the other cases singular and plural, and is like a weak masculine noun

in *e*, except in the acc. sing., fem. and neut., which are always like the nominative.

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	der gute Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind
Gen.	des guten Mannes	der guten Frau	des guten Kindes
Dat.	dem guten Manne	der guten Frau	dem guten Kinde
Acc.	den guten Mann.	die gute Frau.	das gute Kind.

Plural for all genders.

Nom.	die guten Männer	Frauen	Kinder
Gen.	der guten Männer	Frauen	Kinder
Dat.	den guten Männern	Frauen	Kindern
Acc.	die guten Männer	Frauen	Kinder.

In the same way are declined:

N.	jeder hohe Berg	welche große Stadt	manches schöne Bild
	every high hill,	which large town,	many a fine picture,
G.	jedes hohen Berges,	welcher großen	manches schönen
		Stadt,	Bildes,
D.	jedem hohen Berge,	welcher großen	manchem schönen
		Stadt,	Bilde,
A.	jeden hohen Berg,	welche große Stadt,	manches schöne Bild.

Welch, solch and manch are sometimes used before adjectives, without being inflected, to express surprise or admiration. In this case the adjective has the inflections: as, *welch großer Mann* what a great man, *solch schönes Wetter* such charming weather, *manch schönes Bild* many a fine picture. Most authors likewise omit the *n* in the nom. and acc. pl. after *welche*, *solche* and the indefinite numerals (*einige*, *etliche*, *manche*, *mehrere*, *keine*, *andere*, *viele*, *wenig*, *not alle*). Thus, *einige gute Menschen*, but *alle guten Menschen*.

An Adjective preceded by the Indefinite Article

takes, in the nom. and acc. sing., the inflections *er* and *es*, which are wanting in the article. When an adjective is preceded by the indefinite article *ein*, by *kein* *no*, or by one of the possessive adjectives *mein* *my*, *dein* *thy*, *sein* *his* *her* *its*, *unser* *our*, *euer* *your*, *ihr* *their*, which want inflections

in the nom. sing., masc. & neut. and in the acc. neut., then in these parts characteristic terminations are given to the adjective, and in the other parts, the adjective has the same weak terminations, as when declined with the definite article.

Singular.

Nom. mein guter Mann, meine gute Frau, mein gutes Kind
 Gen. meines guten Mannes, meiner guten Frau, meines guten Kindes
 Dat. meinem guten Manne, meiner guten Frau, meinem guten Kinde
 Acc. meinen guten Mann, meine gute Frau, mein gutes Kind.

Plural.

Nom. meine guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder
 Gen. meiner guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder
 Dat. meinen guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern
 Acc. meine guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder.

When two or more adjectives follow one another qualifying the same noun, they may be declined in the same way; or when the first has the strong terminations, the recurrence of s, r and m in the gen. and dat. may be avoided by changing these into the weak n in the following adjectives. Thus we say, ein Rock von gutem, feinen Tuche. The recurrence of s is most objectionable, and should be avoided: thus, der Werth feines, starken blauen Tuches, the value of fine, stout, blue cloth.

To avoid the recurrence of s, many writers change s in the genitive of the adjective into n, although there be only one adjective: thus, süßen Weines, for süßes Weines; even in in adverbial expressions: as, guten Muthes.

When an adjective is preceded by two pronouns then both of these pronouns have their full inflections: as, dieser mein Sohn, das Haus dieses meines guten Sohnes. Jeder and solcher coming after ein are declined like adjectives: Jedem or einem Jedem das Seinige geben, to give every one his share or his due.

An adjective coming after a personal pronoun has the weak form except in the nom. sing.: as, ich armer Mann, dir armen Manne, sich armen Mann, wir armen Männer &c.

Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er* lose the *e* of *el*, *en*, *er*, when they receive another syllable by inflection. Thus we say *der edle Mann*, *ein ebner Weg* instead of *edele* and *ebener*. When, however, the syllable *en* is added to those ending in *el* and *er*, it is usually the *e* of the inflection, that is dropped, especially when the definite article precedes: thus *des edeln Mannes*, *des tapfern Soldaten*. In the declension of *unser* and *euer*, we may omit either the *e* of the pronoun or the *e* of the termination, except the termination be *e* or *er*, when the pronunciation requires that the *e* of the termination should be retained. Thus we may say *unser* or *unser*, *unser* or *unser*, *unsern* or *unsern*. For *unsere*, *euerer*, *unserer*, *euerer*, we can only use *unsere*, *eure*, *unserer*, *eurer*.

Adjectives used substantively retain their peculiar declension as adjectives:

Nom.	<i>der Gelehrte</i>	<i>ein Deutscher</i>	<i>die Alte</i>	<i>das Schöne</i>
	the scholar	a German	the old woman	the beautiful
Gen.	<i>des Gelehrten</i>	<i>eines Deutschen</i>	<i>der Alten</i>	<i>des Schönen</i>
Dat.	<i>dem Gelehrten</i>	<i>einem Deutschen</i>	<i>der Alten</i>	<i>dem Schönen</i>
Acc.	<i>den Gelehrten</i>	<i>einen Deutschen</i>	<i>die Alte</i>	<i>das Schöne</i>
Pl.	<i>die Gelehrten, die Alten, die Schönen.</i>			

In the same way are declined *der Fremde*, *ein Fremder*, *der Reisende*, *ein Reisender* &c.

The Comparison of Adjectives, Steigerung der Eigenschaftswörter.

The comparative is formed by adding the termination *er*, and the superlative by adding *est* to the positive. Both forms follow the regular rules of declension as adjectives.

laut loud, *lauter* louder, *lautest* loudest, *der lauteste*,
breit wide, *breiter* wider, *breitest* widest, *der breiteste*,
süß sweet, *süßer* sweeter, *süßest* sweetest, *der süßeste*.

Comparatives like other adjectives are not declined, when they are used as predicates; as *Die Birne ist süßer als der*

Apfel, the pear is sweeter than the apple. When the superlative is used as predicate and has not got the definite article before it in English, it is expressed by *am* (for *an dem*) with the dative. Thus, *der Weg ist am breitesten*, the way is broadest. *Dieser Donnerſchlag war am lautesten*, this clap of thunder was loudest. *Sene Birne ist am süßesten*, that pear is sweetest.

The vowel *e* of the superlative termination *est* is usually dropped, unless the adjective ends in *t* or *d* or in a sibilant sound (*j*, *ſch*, *ß* or *z*), when the pronunciation requires that it be retained. The superlative of *groß*, however, drops it, likewise participles terminating in *end* or *et*.

ſchön beautiful, *ſchöner*, *der ſchönſte* and *am ſchönſten*,
weiß white, *weißer*, *der weißeste* and *am weißesten*.

Adjectives ending in the unaccented *el*, *en* and *er* generally lose the *e* before *l*, *n* and *r* in the comparative: *edel* noble *edler*; *eben* flat *ebner*; *bitter* bitter *bitterer*. But *der edelſte*, *der ebenſte*, *der bitterſte* follow the regular form.

List of Adjectives which modify *a*, *o* and *u* in the Comparative and Superlative.

Comparatives which come below
have modified *a*, *u* and *o*:
Jung, *jünger* young; *alt*, *älter* old;
ſcharf, *ſchärfer*, sharp; *kalt*, *kälter* cold,
krank *kranker* sick; *arm*, *ärmer*, *ärmſt*,
roth, *röther* red; *warm*, *wärmer*, *wärmſt*;
ſchwach, *ſchwächer* weak; *ſtark*, *ſtärker* strong;
kurz, *kürzer* short; *lang* *länger* long;
dumm *dümmer*; *klug* is clever *smart*,
ſchwarz, *ſchwärzer* black; and *hard* is *hart*;
hoch, *höher*, *höchſt*, *am höchſten*, high
and *nahe*, *näher*, *nächſt*, is nigh
grob *gröber*, coarse; *groß*, *größer*, *größt*;
arg, *ärger*, *ärgſt*, bad, worse, and worst.

Both forms are found with *ſchmal* and *blaß*,
with *frumm* and *fromm*, *geſund* and *naß*.

alt old	krank sick
arg evil	frumm crooked, frummer,
arm poor	kurz short [frümmer
dumm dull, stupid	lang long
fromm pious	nahe, näher, nächſt near
groß rude	roth red
groß, größer, größte great	ſcharf sharp
hoch, höher, höchſt high,	ſchmal small
hart hard	ſchwarz black
jung young	ſchwach weak
kalt cold	ſtark strong
klug clever	warm warm.

**List of Adjectives which do not modify *a*, *o*, *u* in the
Comparative and Superlative.**

Comparing these that follow, you
must leave unchanged *a*, *o* & *u*,
flat level *ſlach*, flat low is *platt*,
zart tender, — satisfied is *fatt*,
laß weary, tired or faint is *matt*,
ſchlank, *ſchlanker* slender, round is *rund*,
variegated speckled *bunt*,
ſtumm, *ſtummer* dumb, and lame is *lahm*,
ſanft soft or gentle, tame is *zahm*,
rude, clumsy *plump*, and blunt is *ſtumpf*,
ſtolz, *ſtolzer* proud, damp *dumpfig*, *dumpf*,
bloß bare, nackt naked, true is *wahr*;
hold favourable, clear is *klar*,
ſalb pale or yellow, raw is *roh*,
brav brave or honest, cheerful *ſroh*,
ſarg, *ſarger* stingy, bare is *ſahl*,
merſch brittle rotten, fallow *ſahl*,
ſchroff, *ſchroffer* rugged, full is *voll*,
raſch *raſcher* rapid, mad is *toll*,
ſtarr, *ſtarrer* rigid, tight is *ſtraff*,

loose loſe, loſer, ſlack is ſchlaff,
 knapp, knapper ſcanty, taſteleſs fade,
 Hohl höhler hollow, ſtraight gerade.

Thoſe which are formed by the addition of a ſyllable ig, jam &c. and monosyllables, which have the diphthong au, remain unaltered, thus:

ſchuldig, ſchuldiger, der ſchuldigſte,
 rauh, rauher, der rauheſte.

The following form their Comparative and Superlative irregularly:

gut good, beſſer better, der beſte the beſt;
 hoch high, höher higher, der höchſte the hiheſt,
 nahe near, näher nearer, der nächſte the neareſt,
 viel much, mehr more, der meiſte the moſt (rarely mehrſte),
 minder leſs, der mindeſte the leaſt.

The length of the adjectives does not, as in Engliſh, affect their comparison. Long adjectives affix the uſual terminations:

angemeſſen adapted, angemeffener, der angemeffenſte,
 ungehörſam diſobedient, ungehörſamer, der ungehörſamſte.

The form with mehr is uſed for the comparative, when two different qualities of the ſame object are compared. Er iſt mehr klug als rechtſchaffen he is more prudent than honeſt. The forms mehr and am meiſten are uſed with thoſe adjectives, which can ſerve only as predicates and which are thus never inflected; theſe are:

bereit ready	gewärtig aware	noth needful
feind hostile	gram adverſe	nütze uſeful
gar cooked	habhaft in poſſeſſion of	quitt rid of
eingedenk mindful	[ſion of ſchuld guilty	
gänge und gebe cur- [rent fund known	irre aſtray	theilhaft participa- [ting
getroßt confident	leid diſtreſſing	verluſtig having for- [feited.

When *most* is used in an **absolute** sense, it is never translated by the superlative. In this sense it is expressed by the adverbs *höchst* most and *äußerst* extremely. *Es ist eine höchst wichtige Sache*, it is a most important affair. *Er war ein höchst gelehrter Mann*, he was a most learned man.

Decline as examples of the three forms of declension:
größerer Gewinn greater gain,
weißere Wolle whiter wool,
wärmeres Wasser warmer water,
der schönere Garten the more beautiful garden, *der schönste Garten*,
die bessere Weisheit the better wisdom, *die beste Weisheit*,
das kürzere Stück the shorter piece, *das kürzeste Stück*,
ein längerer Tag a longer day and *unser längster Tag*,
meine jüngere Schwester my younger sister, *Ihre jüngste Schwester*,
ein stärkeres Pferd no stronger horse, *unser stärkstes Pferd*.

Pronouns, Fürwörter.

Pronouns (Fürwörter) are so called, because they are used for nouns.

They are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns (die persönlichen Fürwörter),
2. Possessive Pronouns (die besitzanzeigenden Fürwörter),
3. Demonstrative Pronouns (die hinweisenden Fürwörter),
4. Relative Pronouns (die zurückbeziehenden Fürwörter),
5. Interrogative Pronouns (die fragenden Fürwörter),
6. Indefinite Pronouns (die unbestimmten Fürwörter).

Personal Pronouns.

The three personal pronouns express 1) the person speaking, 2) the person spoken to, or 3) the person spoken of (*die redende, die angeredete oder die beredete Person; die sprechende, die angesprochene oder die besprochene Person*).

First Person.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ich, I	wir, we
Gen. meiner, of me	unſer, of us
Dat. mir, to me	unſ, to us
Acc. mich, me	unſ, us.

Second Person.

Nom. du, thou	ihr, you
Gen. deiner, of thee	euer, of you
Dat. dir, to thee	euch, to you
Acc. dich, thee	euch, you.

Third Person.

Plural for all genders.

Nom. er he	ſie she	eſ it	ſie they
Gen. ſeiner of him	ihrer of her	ſeiner of it	ihrer of them
Dat. ihm to him	ihr to her	ihm to it	ihnen to them
Acc. ihn him	ſie her	eſ it	ſich ſie them ſich

The genitives mein, dein, ſein, ihr are obsolete forms. Wegen, halben, um — willen, on the account of, for the sake of, governing the genitive, coalesce with meiner, deiner &c. which become meinet, deinet, ſeinet, ihret, unſert, euert: thus um meinetwillen for my sake, unſertwegen on our account.

In the first and second persons, the personal pronouns have no special form, when they are **reflective** — that is — when the subject of the action is also the object of it: I praise myself, ich lobe mich; du ehreſt dich, thou honourest thyself. The sense may also be reciprocal, that is, the subject and object may be mutually active and passive. Thus wir unterſtügen unſ may mean *we support one another*, or it may have the reflective sense *we support ourselves*. In the third person, however, the reflective or reciprocal signification is pointed out by a peculiar form of the dative and accusative cases, namely ſich. He dresses himself, er kleidet ſich. Wie befinden Sie Sich? How do you find yourself? How do you do?

When it is not clear whether the pronoun is reflective

or reciprocal, the word *einander* is either used alone instead of the reciprocal pronoun, or is added after it. *Sie verstehen sich einander* or *Sie verstehen sich*, they understand one another or agree. *Wir umarmten uns* or *wir umarmten einander*, we embraced each other. *Die Schiffe stießen an einander*, the ships struck against each other. *Einander* is not declined, but in the genitive it may be separated into its simple elements. *Traget Einer des Andern Lasten*, bear ye one another's burdens.

Selbst or **selber** in German has not this reflective sense, but it joined to personal pronouns and substantives (like the Latin *ipse*) to give them emphasis. It is not declined. *Sie haben es selbst gesagt*, you said it yourself. *Ich habe es selbst gesehen*, I saw it myself. *Der Mann selbst*, the man himself. When *selbst* is before a noun, it means *even*. *Even his enemies esteemed him*, *selbst seine Feinde achteten ihn*.

In addressing one another, the Germans make use of the third person plural, unless they address members of their own family or very intimate friends, whom they have known from childhood, or the supreme Being, when they use the second person singular *Du*. The third person singular was formerly used in addressing inferiors, but this mode of address should be avoided as disrespectful, and as being now uncommon. The second person plural is used by persons of the lower classes, in addressing each other, or by others when addressing them.

In addressing a person in writing, we always spell the pronoun representing him, whether personal or possessive, with a capital. *Ich danke Dir* or *ich danke Ihnen*, I thank you. *Schicken Sie Ihren Diener*, send your servant.

The neuter *es* is often used in an **indefinite** way to introduce the subject, and in this way is joined to all genders and numbers. *Es ist meine Mutter*, it is my mother. *Es sind die Früchte Ihres Thuns*, it is the fruits of your doing.

Es sind Engländer, they are Englishmen. Wer sind sie? who are they? Es sind meine Schwestern, meine Brüder. (See below, dies, das.)

If, however, the person has been already the subject of discourse, the pronoun agrees with it: wir haben unseren Oheim gesehen; er ist in dem Garten, we have seen uncle; he is in the garden. Es has often the sense of *there* in English. Es folgten viele, there followed many. Es wankten ganze Regimenter, whole regiments wavered. Es zogen drei Bursche wohl über den Rhein.

The Possessive Pronouns.

Poss. Pronouns.		Disjunctive Forms.			
mein	my	meiner	der meine	der meinige	mine
dein	thy	deiner	der deine	der deinige	thine
sein	his	seiner	der seine	der seinige	his
ihr	her	ihrer	der ihre	der ihrige	hers
sein	its	seiner	der seine	der seinige	its
unser	our	unserer	der unsre	der unsrige	ours
euer	your	eurer	der eure	der eurige	yours
ihr	their	ihrer	der ihre	der ihrige	theirs

The possessive pronouns *mein*, *dein* &c. are declined like the indefinite article *ein*, when they go with a noun, as: *Meine Feder ist auf Ihrem Tische*, my pen is on your table. But if they stand alone, without the noun to which they refer, they are said to be disjunctive, and in this position they assume one of the three forms indicated in the above table. *Mein Hut ist schwarz, deiner ist weiß*. My hat is black, yours (disjunctive) is white. *Ich habe mein Messer verloren, geben Sie mir das Ihrige*. I have lost my knife, give me yours. *Nimm das meine*, take mine. *Ich brauche das meinige nicht*, I do not want mine.

These three forms are all of common occurrence.

When the possessive pronouns are used as predicates, they are not declined, unless they be emphatic, when

they assume one of the disjunctive forms. e. g. Dieser Hut ist mein, this hat is mine. But dieser Hut ist meiner (or der meine) nicht deiner, this hat is mine not thine.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

The **simple** demonstrative pronouns are dieser, diese, dieses this; jener, jene, jenes that; and der, die, das. They are called demonstrative (hinweisend) because they point to the thing spoken of.

Dieser and jener are declined regularly as adjectives; the demonstrative der is thus declined:

Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural
Nom. der	die	das	die
Gen. des or dessen	der or deren	des or dessen	der deren or derer
Dat. dem	der	dem	den or denen
Acc. den	die	das	die

Der, when a demonstrative pronoun, has the full accent, while the article der is unaccented. Ich crinnere mich des Umstandes, means, I remember that circumstance, or I remember the circumstance, according as des is pronounced with the full accent or not.

Dieser, jener and der may be used substantively: dieser this one, jener that one, der that one or he. When der is used in this way as a substantive pronoun, its genitive singular is dessen, deren, dessen, and its gen. pl. deren or derer, the latter (derer) being used when it has a relative sentence following and dependent on it. Ich erinnere mich dessen, I remember him. Setze sag' mir das Ende derer, die von Troja fehreten, now tell me the end of those, who returned from Troy. Der ist ein Arzt, that is a physician. Der gefiel mir nicht, he did not please me. In translating it, pronounce the third personal pronoun emphatically. Der muß es sein, *he* it must be.

The neuter dieses and the demonstrative das are often used in an indefinite way, like es, to introduce the subject

of a sentence. In this sense *dieses* is usually contracted into *dies*. *Dies ist eine wichtige Sache*, this is very important business. *Das ist der Hund*, that is the dog. *Das ist des Kaisers Hand und Siegel*, that is the emperor's hand and seal. *Das ist der Fall*, that is the case. When used with the personal pronouns, *dies* and *das* may precede the verb *to be* but *es* must follow it. We can say *das bin ich*, *das sind wir*; but we must say *ich bin es*, *Sie sind es*; it is I, it is you.

The **Compound** demonstrative pronouns are *derjenige that*, always followed by the relative *welcher* or *der*, *derselbe the same*, used alone, or followed generally by *der*.

Derjenige and *derselbe*, or *derselbige* are declined throughout, as if each were two words, the first of them the definite article and the second an adjective of the weak form.

In the following cases, *der* or one of the compound demonstratives must be used instead of *dieser*, *jener*, or the third personal pronoun.

1. When *he*, *that* or *those* mean *such*, *as* or *that sort* of persons or things, which is denoted by a relative sentence coming after, we must not translate by *er* or by *jener*, but by *derjenige* (or else by *der* or *solcher*); I value those who speak the truth, *ich achte diejenigen, welche die Wahrheit reden*. Fortune helps them who help themselves *das Glück hilft denen, die sich selbst helfen*. That sort of ships which are now built, *solche Schiffe, die jetzt gebaut werden*. Such as are poor, *diejenigen* or *solche, welche* (or *die*) *arm sind*.

On the other hand, *dieser* or *jener* point out the person or thing spoken of apart from any relative phrase. *Jener, der dort in dem Garten spaziert, ist mein Freund*, that man (there), who is walking there in the garden, is my friend.

2. When the third personal pronoun represents an inanimate object, its genitive and dative are not *seiner* and *ihm*, but *dessen* and *dem*, or *desselben* and *demselben*. *Er bot mir Wein an, aber ich bedarf dessen nicht*, he offered me wine but I do not require it.

When the pronoun representing an inanimate object follows a preposition governing the dative or the accusative, it becomes *da* (or *dar* before a vowel), and **coalesces** with the preposition. *Ich habe eine Feder, aber ich kann mit derselben or damit nicht schreiben*, I have a pen, but I cannot write with it. When such words are first and emphatic, *da* has the accent. *Davon will ich nicht essen*, of that I will not eat. *Dazu rathe ich*, I advise to that. If however the word be in the middle or at the end, the accent is put on the second syllable: *Er will nicht dafür bezahlen*. -If the pronoun has a relative clause following it, we must not use this combined form. *Ich werde nicht von dem (not davon) essen was Du bringst*, I shall not eat of that which thou bringest. *Ich rathe nicht zu dem (not dazu), was er vorschlägt*.

With prepositions, that govern the genitive, *da* does not coalesce. *Trotz dessen*, in spite of that. *Statt derer*. A sort of compound, however, is formed with *deß*, in the case of *deßwegen*, *deßhalb*, on that account, and *deßgleichen* likewise. Pronouns representing persons do not coalesce with prepositions; we must say *von ihm*, not *davon*, of him.

3. An ambiguity sometimes arises in the use of the third personal pronoun, making it uncertain in English whether we mean the subject of the sentence or some other word following it. Thus, in the sentence *William travelled with his cousin and his son*, it does not appear whether it was William's son or his cousin's, with whom he travelled. This is obviated in German, by using *dessen* (like the Latin *ejus*) for the genitive and *derselbe* for any of the cases, when we mean any object or noun belonging to the predicate, and *seiner*, *ihrer*, when we mean the subject. *Wilhelm reifete mit seinem Vetter und dessen Sohne or dem Sohne desselben*, he travelled with his cousin's son. *Mit seinem Sohne* would mean that it was his own (William's) son. *Sie sprach von Ihrer Tochter und erzählte von den Leiden derselben*, she spoke of her daughter and told of her (that is, her daughter's) sufferings. *Der Vater schrieb seinem Sohne, derselbe müsse nach*

London reifen, the father wrote to his son, that he (his son) should go to London. Roland ritt hinterm Vater her mit deffen Speer und Schilde. (Uhland.)

4. *Derfelbe* is sometimes used also for the third personal pronoun to avoid repeating the same word. Sobald Marie Ihre Mutter jah, fragte fie diefelbe (instead of fragte fie fie), as soon as Mary saw her mother, she asked her.

The same. *Derfelbe* like *der*, may be followed by a relative sentence or not. *Derfelbe* is more frequently followed by the relative *der*, than by *welcher*. *Derfelbe* Mann, der das Gejeß gab, ipricht auch das Urtheil, the same man, who gave the law, pronounces also the judgment.

Such a sentence, as *Charles is of the same opinion as Henry*, is translated, Karl und Heinrich find derfelben Meinung, or find einer Meinung.

The adverb *eben* is frequently used with the demonstratives. Eben diefer Mann, this very man. Eben derfelbe.

Solcher is declined as an adjective: folcher Sturm such a storm, folche Hitze. It is also preceded by the indefinite article: as, ein folcher Mann such a man; gen. eines folchen Mannes; or followed by it, as in English, and then it is not declined: Solch ein Mann, genitive solch eines Mannes &c.

Such as may be translated by *derjenige* or by *folcher* or *der Art*. Such as are poor, meaning those who are poor, diejenigen, welche arm find. Such people as are avaricious, folche Menschen, or Menschen der Art, welche geizig find. *Solcher* is also followed by *wie* as in English. Such ships as are now built, folche Schiffe wie jezt gebaut werden. When *wie* is used in this way, *solch* is often omitted. A king such as Frederick, ein König wie Friedrich.

Such as, or *such that*, implying a consequence, are translated by *solch . . . daß*, *der Art . . . daß*. Das Betragen des Herzogs war der Art, daß es einigen Verdacht erregte, the conduct of the duke was such as to induce suspicion. Solch, however, is never used alone in the predicate, but *der Art*. Ich bin nicht der Art or von diefer Art, I am not such.

Relative Pronouns.

The **definite** relative pronouns are *welcher* and *der*, the indefinite is *wer*.

Welcher, *welche*, *welches* is declined like an adjective in the strong form; *der*, *die*, *das* is declined like the demonstrative *der*. *Welcher*, however, ought not to be used in the genitive case, which might be mistaken for another. Instead of it, *dessen*, *deren*, *dessen* — pl. *deren* is used. I have some books, the price of which I do not know. *Ich habe einige Bücher, deren Preis ich nicht kenne. Dies ist der Mann, dessen Haus ich Ihnen diesen Morgen gezeigt habe*, this is the man, whose house I showed you this morning.

When the relative refers to personal pronouns, it is always translated by *der*, and when it refers to the pronouns of the first and second persons, the pronoun is repeated after *der*. *Ich der ich ihn kenne*, I who know him. *Er, der ihn sah*, he who saw him. *Unser Vater, der Du bist im Himmel*, Our Father who art in heaven. So: *Sie, die Sie*, you who.

The **indefinite** pronoun *wer* has no special form for the feminine, and it is not used in the plural, but we can say *wer sind sie?* who are they? It is thus declined:

	Relating to persons.	Relating to things.
Nom.	<i>Wer</i> who	<i>Was</i> what
Gen.	<i>Wessen</i> (or <i>wes</i>) whose	<i>von was</i> or <i>wessen</i> (of what)
Dat.	<i>Wem</i> to whom	
Acc.	<i>Wen</i> whom.	<i>Was</i> what.

Instead of *derjenige . . . welcher*, we may use *wer* with its correlative *der*, but *der* must *follow* the sentence containing *wer*, and in this case *der* is sometimes omitted. *Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen* or *der muß fühlen*, he, who will not hear, must feel. *Da* is frequently joined to *wer* in such sentences: *Wer da weiß Gutes zu thun, und thut es nicht, dem ist es Sünde*, to him that knows to do good, and doeth it not, &c. *Wer meine Börse stiehlt, stiehlt Tand*, who steals my purse, steals trash. When the neuter of the demonstratives *das*, *dasjenige*, *dasselbe* is used substantively, the proper cor-

relative is was not welches, and in this case was may follow das as well as precede it. Er wollte die Hälfte von dem haben, was ich besitze, he wished to have the half of what I possess. Das ist nicht richtig, was Du sagst, what you say is not correct. Er wollte gern dasjenige, was er wußte auf Andere übertragen, he was desirous of imparting to others what he knew himself. Ich sagte dasselbe, was ich dachte, I said the same as I thought.

Was is also used after the indefinite numerals alles all, etwas something, Manches much, Nichts nothing, Vieles many a thing. Alles was ich habe, all I have, vieles was ich sah, many things which I saw. Nichts was ich fürchten konnte, nothing that I could fear.

The genitive of was after these is dessen. Etwas dessen Sie sich rühmen können, something of which you can boast.

The relative can be preceded in its own sentence only by a preposition. All of whom is die alle. Other expressions must be translated in a different way. They risked several engagements, in most of which they were victorious, Sie wagten mehrere Treffen, in denen sie meistens siegreich waren.

Even the preposition generally follows the relative, when combined with it into one word. The prepositions governing the dative and accusative, an, auf, von &c. form the compounds woran, worauf, wovon, worüber &c., the wo combining with the preposition in the same way as the da and hier used for demonstratives. Ich erinnere mich der Auftritte wovon, or von denen du erzählst, I remember the scenes which you are relating. Sagen Sie, warum er nicht gekommen ist, say why he is not come. In the same way weshalb and weshalb are used. When however the relative pronoun refers to persons, it can not be so combined. Der Mann von welchem (not wovon) Sie sprechen, the man of whom you speak.

Ever after relative pronouns is translated by auch or immer, an auxiliary or the subjunctive mood being at the

same time used. Wer es auch sei, whoever it may be. Wer es auch gesagt haben mag, whoever may have said so.

The relative pronoun is never omitted as in English, thus: *The pens you sent me are very good*, means: *the pens which* &c. Die Federn die (or welche) Sie mir schickten, sind sehr gut.

Interrogative Pronouns.

In interrogative sentences, wer, was &c. are used substantively, and welcher as an adjective. Wer ist da? who is there? Welches Buch haben Sie gelesen? what book have you read.

In speaking of things, the interrogative combines with the same prepositions as the relative. Wovon sprechen Sie? of what do you speak? but Von wem sprechen Sie? of whom? Woran denken Sie? of what do you think? but an wen denken Sie? of whom do you think?

Was für ein? declined like ein means *what sort of?* Was für einer ist er? What sort of a man is he? It is also used in exclamations. Was für Berge, was für Ströme trennen uns doch! What mountains, what torrents still separate us!

Instead of was für, we may say welcher ein in exclamations. It is declined like ein. Welch ein Mann! what a man! genitive welcher eines Mannes!

Indefinite Pronouns.

The indefinite pronouns are Jemand any one, some one, and Niemand no one; for which Einer and Keiner are sometimes used, etwas something, nichts nothing, man one, people, jedermann every body.

Jemand and Niemand take the termination es in the genitive; in the dative they have en, or remain unaltered. Ich will es Niemanden sagen, I will tell no one. Wenn einer eine Reise thut, when one makes a journey. Jedermann takes a in the genitive; in the other cases it remains the same.

Jedermanns Freund ist Niemand's Freund, every one's friend is no one's friend.

Etwas and nichts are not declined. In common conversation was may be used for etwas. Haben Sie was gehört? did you hear any thing?

Man one, they, people, occurs only in the nominative case; the genitive case *one's* becomes the possessive pronoun sein; and the other cases are taken from ein or the reflective sich. Man muß seinen Nachbar lieben one must love one's neighbour. Man muß sich helfen, one must help one's self. Wenn man Geld verloren hat, so thut es einem leid, when one has lost money, one is sorry for it. Es weiß Niemand, wo Eines der Schuh drückt, als der ihn an hat, nobody knows where the shoe pinches, but he who has it on.

Summary of Remarks on the Pronouns.

Personal pronouns.

Say respectfully Sie or familiarly Du,
less properly Ihr, second plural, for *you*.

Decline the possessives conjunctive like ein;
but meiner, der meine, der meinige, *mine*.

Self selbst with a noun; *self* reflective mich, dich,
and in third person sich: sie entschuldigen sich,
wir helfen uns might mean *ourselves* or *each other*;
wir helfen (uns) einander, *assist one another*.

Es ist or es sind may be put, at the head
of a sentence, for subjects not formerly said:
Es sind Schüler. Ich bin es. So, dies ist or das,
and in questions, enquiring *what sort is*, with was.

Demonstrative and Correlative Pronouns.

The Demonstratives dieser and jener or *that*
are absolute, pointing immediately at;
derjenige *that* is correlative to,
and followed by welcher or der, meaning *who*.
But we find the demonstrative der with the tone
correlated to Wer, or, like jener, alone:

Der ist unser Freund, *he* emphatic, *that there*
der follows, or may be left out after *wer*:
Wer drohet, der warnt;¹ wer flieht, wird gejagt.²
Derjenige weint leicht, der — welcher — leicht lacht³;

With *derselbe* — *der*, (*welcher*); with *solcher* — *der*, *wie*;
and with *wie* is repeated a pronoun, as *sie*:
Solche Freunde, wie sie unser Vater empfiehlt.⁴
so, Briefe, wie ich deren häufig erhielt.⁵

The personal pronouns repeat after *der*:
ich *der* *ich* *bin*, excepting the third person *er*.
We say *welches*, agreeing with nouns; but we use
dessen, *deren*, *of which*, when alone, and for *whose*.

1. He who threatens warns. 2. He who flees is pursued.
3. He weeps easily, who laughs easily. 4. Such friends as our
father recommends. 5. Such letters as I often received.

Demonstratives used for the 3rd Pers. Pron.

When the subject's referred to, use *er*, *seiner*, *ihrer*;
but *derselbe* or *dessen* for object or nearer:
sie *schickt* *seine* *Tochter* *nach* *Deutschland*, *damit*
dieselbe *Deutsch* *lerne*¹ — the latter to *wit*.

For euphony's sake, you will frequently see
denselben for *ihn*, and *dieselbe* for *sie*:
for *kennen* *Sie* *sie*,² *wir* *empfehlen* *ihn* *ihm*³,
say *dieselbe* for *her*, and *denselben* for *him*.

Use *desselben* or *dessen* or *derer* in place
of inanimate objects for genitive case;
for the dative use *denen* (pl.), *demselben* or *dem*;
prepositions take *da*, *hier* or *wo* joined to them:
ich *bedarf* *dessen* *nicht*, *und* *ich* *will* *nichts* *davon*⁴;
Wir *denken* *dem* *nach*, or *daran*, think upon⁵.
When a relative follows, *of that* is *von dem*:
and *derer* — not *deren* — in plural *of them*

ich rathe zu dem was er sagt⁶ — not dazu.
Es giebt deren viele⁷; but derer with *who*.
Such composite words as davon and daran,
though spoken of things, do not stand for a man.

Indefinite Pronouns.

Man *one* takes its genitive, dative, from ein;
its accusative is sich; the possessive is sein.
From Jemand come Jemandes, Jemanden — Einer.
From Niemand come Niemandes, Niemanden — Keiner.
From Jedermann, Jedermanns genitive case.
Ein gewisser, one known by his name or his face.
Alles, Etwas, Nichts, Manches, and Vieles, which go
with the relative was, or with dessen, or wo:
as, *all I possessed*, Alles, was ich besaß —
superlatives likewise: das Kostbarste, was.⁸

1. She sends her daughter to Germany that she (her daughter) may learn German. 2. Do you know her. 3. We recommended him to him. 4. I do not want it, and I will have none of it. 5. We think or meditate upon it. 6. My advice is to do what he says. 7. There are many of them. 8. The most valuable which.

Numerals, Zahlwörter.

Numerals express the number, the quantity, or the order of things. They express the number either definitely or indefinitely.

Definite Numerals are either Cardinal or Ordinal. The former answer the question wie viel? how many? The latter the question der, die, das wievielfte?

The Cardinal Numbers.

1 ein or eins	4 vier
2 zwei	5 fünf
3 drei	6 sechs

7 sieben	40 vierzig
8 acht	50 fünfzig
9 neun	60 sechzig
10 zehn	70 siebzig
11 elf or eilf	80 achtzig
12 zwölf	90 neunzig
13 dreizehn	100 hundert
14 vierzehn	101 hundert und ein
15 fünfzehn	121 hundert und ein und zwanzig
16 sechzehn	200 zwei hundert
17 siebenzehn or siebzehn	300 drei hundert
18 achtzehn	1000 tausend
19 neunzehn	2000 zweitausend
20 zwanzig	10,000 zehntausend
21 ein und zwanzig	100,000 hunderttausend
22 zwei und zwanzig	1,000,000 eine Million
30 dreißig	2,000,000 zwei Millionen
1873 Eintausend, acht hundert und drei und siebzig, or achtzehn-	
hundert und drei und siebenzig.	

Ein, eine, ein, when used before a noun, is the same as the indefinite article with a stronger accent. When used without a noun, it is declined *einer, eine, eines or eins*. When the definite article or a demonstrative pronoun precedes it, it is declined like a regular adjective: *der eine, die eine, das eine*, Genitive *des einen &c.* Thus: *einer der Männer* or *der eine*.

Ein is also used in the plural with the definite article; *die einen* means *some*, *die andern* *the others*.

When *zwei* and *drei* are not preceded by some word, which will indicate the case, they are declined:

Nom. *zwei*, gen. *zweier*, dat. *zweien*, acc. *zwei*.

Nom. *drei*, gen. *dreier* dat. *dreien*, acc. *drei*.

Die Zusammenkunft der drei Freunde, the meeting of the three friends; but *die Zusammenkunft dreier Freunde* the meeting of three friends. *Ich habe es zweien gesagt*, I have told

it to two; but *ich habe es den zwei Brüdern gesagt*, I have told it to the two brothers.

The numerals from 4 to 12 may take *en* in the dative case, when they are used substantively, that is, when not followed by a noun. *Das Kind kriecht auf allen Vieren*, the child creeps on all fours. *Er fährt mit Sechsen*, he rides in a coach with six.

The cardinals (except *ein*, *zwei*, *drei*) have no inflection to express the genitive; and, unless this is indicated by some article or pronoun, going along with them, we must use *von*. *Das ist die Meinung von Vieren unter uns*, that is the opinion of four of us. *Das Urtheil von vier Richtern*, the sentence of four judges. *But die Meinung dieser vier unter uns, das Urtheil dieser vier Richter*.

When the cardinals are used to denote cyphers, numbers marked on dice &c., they are feminine substantives, and take *en* in the plural. *Eine Zwei* a two; *drei Neunen* three nines.

Hundert and *Tausend*, when used as substantives, are neuter, and take *e* in the plural. *Einige Hunderte*, some hundreds; *Tausende* thousands. They are not used with the numeral *ein* preceding them, except in dates. *Tausend Thaler*, one thousand thalers; but, *ein tausend acht hundert und siebenzig*. *Million* is feminine: plural, *Millionen*.

The Ordinals.

The ordinal numbers are derived from the cardinals by adding *te* up to 19, and *ste* after 19; thus, *der vierte* the fourth, *der zehnte* the tenth, *der zwanzigste* the twentieth, *der hundertste* the hundredth. Three are formed irregularly: *der erste* the first, *der dritte* the third, *der achte* the eighth. They are declined in the same manner as other adjectives: *der zweite Tag*; *mein zwanzigstes Jahr*; *des hundertsten Mannes*; *vierzehnter Abschnitt*, fourteenth section.

When the number is compound, the termination is added to the last only: as, *der zwei hundert acht und vierzigste*,
5*

· Hälfte des Landes, half the country. Halb may also be used without the articles, adverbially, like ganz: halb Paris, half Paris; ganz London, all London.

Dimidiatives.

· Zweitehalb or Aunderthhalb, one and a half (lit. the second a half); Drittehalb, two and a half; Viertehalb, three and a half &c.

The hour is thus expressed:

es ist ein Uhr or es ist eins, it is one o'clock
 es ist ein Viertel auf eins } it is a quarter past twelve,
 es ist ein Viertel nach zwölf } that is, towards one.
 es ist halb zwei, it is half past one, half two
 es ist drei Viertel auf drei, it is a quarter to three
 es ist zehn Minuten nach sechs, it is ten minutes past six
 es ist in fünf Minuten halb sechs, it is 25 minutes past five
 es ist in zehn Minuten zwei, it is 10 minutes to two.

The Indefinite Numerals.

All, all	ganz, whole	sämmtlich, the whole
ander, other	jeder, every	viel, much
beide, both	kein, no	viele, many
einige	mancher, many a mehr, more mehrere, several	wenig, little
etwelche } some		wenige, few
etliche }		weniger, fewer
etwas some	die meisten, the most	irgend ein, any (ever a).

Indefinite numerals are declined like adjectives.

When an adjective follows an indefinite numeral which has the regular terminations, as einige, etliche, viele, mehrere, keine, manche, the adjective takes the strong termination e in the nom. and acc. and the weak termination en in the gen. and dat.

Nom.	einige neue Bücher,	manche gute Freunde
Gen.	einiger neuen Bücher,	mancher guten Freunde
Dat.	einigen neuen Büchern,	manchen guten Freunden,
Acc.	einige neue Bücher,	manche gute Freunde.

All, Ganz, Jeder, All, Whole, Every.

All *all* expresses both number and quantity. When it signifies quantity, it is usually singular; and in this case, if followed by a possessive (and sometimes by a demonstrative) pronoun, it is not declined: as *all dieser Wein*, all this wine; *all mein Geld*, all my money; *in aller Eile*, in all haste.

All is followed in English by *of*, as if it were a partitive; but in German, *all* agrees with the noun or pronoun: *all of us*, *mir alle*; *all of them*, *sie alle*.

All is never followed, as in English, by the article: *all the boys*, *alle Knaben* or *die Knaben alle*. When a relative sentence follows we say *alle die Knaben*, frequently accenting *die*, which is then the demonstrative, not the article: e. g. *Knaben, welche in der Schule sind . . .*

Ganz. When *all* refers to quantity, not to number, it is to be translated by *ganz*, never by *all*. *All the country*, *das ganze Land*. *All the day*, *der ganze Tag*. *Ganz* like *halb* is not declined before neuter names of towns and countries. *All England*, *ganz England*. *All Paris*, *ganz Paris*.

Jeder, *jede, jedes*, means *every, each*. *Every moment is precious*, *jeder Augenblick ist theuer*. *This man has two brothers and each of them is rich*, *dieser Mann hat zwei Brüder und jeder von ihnen ist reich*.

Every is to be rendered by *all*, when things are spoken of generally and collectively, not singly or severally. *Every year*, *alle Jahre* or *jedes Jahr*. *His house is open to all*, *sein Haus ist Allen offen*. *Alle drei Stunden*, *every three hours*. We may also say: *Alles freut sich*, *every body is happy*.

Some, Any, Ever a.

In positive and affirmative sentences, *any* is often equivalent to *every*; and, in this sense, is to be translated by *jeder* or *Jedermann*. *Sie werden es in jedem Laden finden*, you will find it in any shop (that is, every shop). *Jedermann kann Ihnen sagen*, *any (every) person can tell you*. *Any never has this sense in interrogative and conditional sentences*.

When *any* is not equivalent to *every*, it may refer to quantity, to some abstract quality, or to individuals numerically.

1. In the first case, *some* or *any*, used adjectively *before a noun of quantity*, is commonly not translated. Haben Sie Brod? have you any bread? But we may use *etwas* in this case as an indeclinable adjective: haben Sie etwas Brod, have you got *any* bread.

More commonly *etwas* is used as an indefinite pronoun meaning *something* or *anything*. Haben Sie etwas erhalten? have you received anything? Instead of *Etwas*, *was* is sometimes used: wenn ihr mir was zu sagen habt, if you have anything to say to me. Ich habe mir was erworben, I have earned something. It is made still more indefinite, when *irgend* is put before it: *irgend was*, *irgend etwas* aught, anything. *Etwas* is also used adverbially: *etwas stolz*, somewhat proud, rather proud.

2. Some *before abstract nouns and names of materials* may be translated by *einiger*, *einige*, *einiges*. Wir hatten noch einige Hoffnung, we had still some hope. Der Schmied kaufte einiges alte Eisen, the smith bought some old iron. Einige Zeit, some time. But in this sense *etwas* is often used instead of *einiger*.

3. *Some* or *any*, referring to individuals *numerically*, is to be translated by *irgend ein* (ever a) used adjectively; and by *Jemand* or *Einer* (seldom *Wer*), or more emphatically, by *irgend Jemand* or *irgend Einer*, used substantively. Ist Jemand hier gewesen? has any one been here? Irgend ein Schriftsteller hat gesagt, some author has said. Um irgend einer Ursache willen, for some cause or other. Irgend einer seiner Freunde, some one of his friends. Irgend ein Anderer muß es gethan haben. Wenn Jemand eine Reise thut, so kann er was erzählen, when any one makes a journey, he can relate something.

The plural of these indefinite numerals is *einige* or *etliche* some; or we say *irgend welche*. *Einige* is the more general word: it sometimes corresponds, to *a few*; *einige*

Freunde werden mich morgen besuchen, a few friends will visit me to-morrow. Wir begegneten einigen Fischern, we met a few fishermen. Etliche is somewhat antiquated, and can only be said of what can be measured or numbered. It cannot therefore be used with abstract nouns. We do not say etliche Hoffnung, *some hope*, but we can say nach etlicher Zeit; in etlicher Entfernung; at some distance; indem er säete fiel etliches an den Weg &c. Matt. XIII. 4; etliche nun schrien dies, etliche anderes, some now cried one thing, others another.

Any one you please, jeder beliebige.

In **Negative sentences** *not any* when used as an adjective is kein; when used substantively, *not any person* is Keiner or Niemand, no person. *Not anything* is Nichts. Kennst du sonst Keinen? do you know any one else? Ist Niemand hier gewesen? has no one been here? Mit nichts fähst (fängt) man Nichts, from nothing comes nothing.

When **some or any standing alone** refers to some preceding noun, it is translated by welcher or etlicher, when singular, and by welche or etliche, when plural; or the word may be entirely omitted. Give him some bread, if you have any, geben Sie ihm Brod, wenn sie welches haben. Have you any cherries? I have still some. Hast Du Kirschchen? ich habe noch welche or einige, or ich habe noch.

Viel, Mancher, Mehr, Mehrere, Wenig, Weniger.

When viel and wenig imply plurality, that is, when they mean *many* or *few*, they are declined; but, if they imply mere quantity, that is, if they mean *much* or *little*, they are not declined.

1. When they refer to **number** they are always *declined when they stand alone without a substantive, or when they are preceded by the definite article*. Viele sind berufen, aber wenige sind auserwählt, many are called but few chosen. Selbst die wenigen Bewilligungen, even the smallest grants. Und dann die vielen Feindesposten, and then the many out-

posts of the enemy. When *wenig* and *viel* mean **quantity** they are often declined as substantives, *when they stand alone*. Mit *Vielem* hält man Haus, mit *Wenigem* kommt man aus; one keeps house with much, and gets through with little.

2. In other cases, *wenig* and *viel* are declined or not declined, according as the idea of plurality or mere quantity prevails. Er hat *vieler* Freunde, he has many friends; but Schiller says: Marie hat noch *viel* verborgne Freunde, Mary has still many secret friends. *Viel* Geld, much money. Mit *wenig* *Wiß* und *viel* *Behagen*, with little wit and much complacency. Mit *vielm* *Bergnügen*, with much pleasure. Wegen *vieler* Arbeit, on account of much work. In *wenig* Stunden, in a short time. *Vieler* Gram und *vieler* Sorge haben ihn gebeugt, much grief and care have bowed him down. Ein *wenig* a little is never inflected: ein *wenig* Wein.

Gering means *little, unimportant*; *klein* *little in size*. Eine *geringe* Sache a trifle. Von *geringem* Werthe of small worth.

Mancher in the singular means *many a*. Sie werden dort *manchen* alten Freund finden, you will find there many an old friend. In the plural, it means *many, a number of*: *Manche* Sterne haben ein *bläuliches* Licht, a number of stars have a bluish light. *Einige* *some* denotes a fewer number than *manche*. *Mehrere* means *several*: ich habe ihn *mehrere* Male gesehen, I have seen him several times.

Mehr more is not declined; nor is *weniger* fewer, if it is joined to a noun. *Mehr* *Reiche*, more rich people; *weniger* *Arme*, fewer poor people. But if *weniger* means persons and stands alone, it is declined: *Wenige* haben es versucht und noch *wenigeren* ist es gelungen, few have attempted it, and still fewer have succeeded. *More* is translated by *noch*, when it means *besides*: five groschen more, noch fünf Groschen; once more, noch einmal.

Meist, *most* and *wenigst* *fewest* are declined regularly, as adjectives: leere Wagen machen den *meisten* Lärm, empty wagons make the most noise. Die *Meisten* sagten daß . . ., the most said that.

Beide, Both, Either.

Beide both admits the definite article, or a demonstrative pronoun before it; but not, as in English, after it. Both the poets, beide Dichter or die beiden Dichter. Both these historians, diese beiden Geschichtschreiber. *Both* does not govern the genitive plural, like a partitive: both of us, wir beide; both of these houses, die beiden Häuser.

Both when a conjunction is translated sowohl: sowohl der Vater als der Sohn, both father and son: sowohl er als seine Frau, both he and his wife.

Either, neither, are translated einer der beiden, keiner der beiden; but beiden may be replaced by another word or left out, if the sense does not require it. *Either of you*, einer von Ihnen. I do not know either of the two, ich kenne keinen von beiden. On neither side, auf keiner Seite.

When *either* is equivalent to *both*, it is translated by beide alone. In either case, that is, in both cases, auf beiden Seiten. *Either way* adv., auf die eine oder die andere Weise, auf diese oder jene Weise.

Ander, Other.

The other is der andere. Der andere Mann, die andere Hand, das andere Haus; die Andern the others. *Another* is ein anderer. Ein anderer Rock, another coat; eine andere Farbe, a different colour. Eine andere Tasse, means a different cup, not the same one; but noch eine Tasse Thee, means another cup of tea, an additional one. *The other day* is, in German, vor einigen Tagen or neulich.

Adverbs used as Indefinite Numerals.

Allein alone; nur only; bloß merely; beinahe nearly, *not actually*; fast almost, *but not wholly*; ungefähr about; etwa about, *more or less*; kaum scarcely; genug enough, when joined to substantives express number or quantity, like indefinite numerals. Gott allein (und keinem Andern) gebührt die Ehre, to God alone (and no one else) is the honour due. Wenn einem Gefangenen täglich nur ein Groschen (und keine

größere Geldsumme) gereicht wird, so kann er dafür bloß Brod (und keine andere kostbare Art von Essen) anschaffen, when a prisoner receives only a groschen daily (and no *greater* sum), he can procure merely bread (and no *other* expensive *sort* of food).

Summary of Remarks on the Numerals.

On the cardinals¹ *hinge* all the others: from these come distributives *je zwei, zu dreien* by threes; the ordinals — those by which *order* is told; and those with *fach, fältig*, or so many fold; the compounds in *tel*: as, *das Viertel* the quart; and *drittelhalb, zwei ein halb* — fractional part; and *einerlei, allerlei*, of every kind — which three latter classes are never declined; once *einmal*; but *first*, in the first, second, place, is *erstlich* or *erstens* in genitive case.

Indefinite Numerals.

When *any* means *every*, then *jeder* is said, or *jedweder, jeglicher, aller*, instead; but, otherwise, *Jemand* and *einige* come, as in questions, conditions, for *any* and *some*. *Some* may be omitted with nouns, meaning *mass*; but alone, it is *etwas* or *welcher* or *was*. We say: *einige Hoffnung* and *einige Zeit* and *einiges Eisen*; or *etwas* is right. *Jrgend Jemand* — *ein* — *welche*, *some, ever a one not anything nichts, and not any is none*.

Decline *viel* and *wenig*, when number is shown, when preceded by *der*, and when standing alone. All the boys, *alle Knaben* — with nothing for *the*; but, if *welcher* comes after, we say *alle die*. When *all* means *the whole of*, translate it by *ganz*: *das ganze Europa, ganz Frankreich*, all France.

All does not take *von*, and it does not decline with possessives; as, all of my money, all *mein* (Geld). Both *beide*, *die beide*, which also agrees and does not take *von*: *diese beide*, both these. *Each*, *either* and *neither* are *jeder* and *einer* and *keiner* — *von beiden*; or simply say *keiner*. In *was für ein*, *welch ein*, what sort of, what kind, and *solch ein* (for *ein solcher*), *ein* is declined.

1. The *cardinal* numbers are so named from *cardo* a hinge, because all the other numerals *hinge* upon them.

The Verb (das Zeitwort oder das Verb).

A verb is a word by which we are able to assert (*ausfagen*) concerning the thing spoken about (*das Subject*), that it does something, or is acted upon, or is in a certain condition. The thing asserted or denied is called the predicate (*das Prädikat*, *das Ausgesagte*).

Different Kinds of Verbs.

Verbs are either *Principal* expressing the idea asserted (*Begriffsverben*) or they are *auxiliary* (*Hülfsverben*). The auxiliary verbs are (1) the *substantive* verb *sein*, expressing the mere connection between the subject and the predicate, and forming what is sometimes called the *copula*; (2) the verbs of *tense* (*haben* and *werden*), expressing the time of the action; and (3) the seven verbs of *mood*, expressing the mode in which we predicate, as a necessity, possibility or command.

Verbs are *Transitive* (*zielende* oder *Transitiva*), when the action implies that there is an object (*das Object* oder *Zielwort*) acted upon; as, the hunter shoots the hare, *der Jäger schießt den Hasen*.

Transitive verbs may be either in the *active voice* (*die Active* oder *die Thatform*), or in the *passive voice* (*die Passive* oder *Leidform*), according as the subject of the sentence

(that is, the nominative to the verb) is the *agent*, or the *object* of the action. The farmer has bought a horse, *der Pächter hat ein Pferd gekauft* (active.) A horse has been bought by the farmer, *ein Pferd ist von dem Pächter gekauft worden* (passive).

Verbs, which do not imply an object acted upon, are called *Intransitive* (*ziellose, Intransitiva auch Neutra*): as, the child sleeps, *das Kind schläft*; the boy runs, *der Knabe läuft*.

Some verbs are followed by the reflective pronouns *mich, dich, sich, pl. uns, euch, sich*, while the idea expressed by both is intransitive: as, *sich wundern* to wonder at, *sich schämen* to be ashamed of. These verbs are called *reflective* (*reflexive Verben*).

Some verbs express an action but have no subject or nominative, except the indefinite *es it*: as, *es regnet* it rains, *es hungert mich* I am hungry, *es tömmelt* the drum is beating. These are called *impersonal* verbs (*unpersönliche Verben*).

Moods and Tenses.

There are four moods or modes of connecting the predicate with the subject (*Modus, pl. Modi, Modusformen oder Aussageformen*). They are *der Indicativ, der Conjunctiv, der Conditionalis, der Imperativ*, which express respectively actual reality (*Wirlichkeit*), possibility (*Möglichkeit*), condition (*Bedingung*) and command (*Befehl*).

There are six tenses (*Zeiten oder Zeitformen*): namely, three *absolute*, *das Präsens* (die Gegenwart), *das Perfectum* (die Vergangenheit), *das Futurum* (die Zukunft); and three *relative*, which express the time as referred to some other event: *das Imperfectum* (die Mitvergangenheit), *das Plusquamperfectum* (die Vorvergangenheit), *das Futurum exactum* (die Vorzukunft, future perfect).

The Participles (*Participien*) express the meaning of the verb as an adjective: as, *das schlafende Kind* (present), the sleeping child, *der geliebte Sohn* (perfect), the beloved son. A future participle is formed by putting *zu* before the present participle: as, *ein zu liebender Mann*, a man to be loved.

The Infinitive (der Infinitiv) expresses the idea of the verb as a noun; as schreiben to write, schlafen to sleep. In German, we say also das Schreiben writing, das Schlafen sleeping, where *writing* and *sleeping* are verbal substantives called *gerunds* in English Grammar. The infinitive preceded by the preposition zu is called the *supine*: as zu reden, to speak.

Weak and Strong Conjugations.

There are two forms of inflecting verbs in German called the Weak and the Strong Conjugations (die starke und die schwache Conjugation), and corresponding to *Regular* and *Irregular Verbs* in English Grammar.

The **Weak Conjugation** forms the imperfect tense of the indicative, and the past participle, by adding t or et (in English *d* or *ed*) to the radical syllable — t only, when the pronunciation does not require et, that is when the verb does not end in the sound of gn, ð or t. Thus, lieben to love, geliebt loved; but fürchten to fear, gefürchtet feared.

To this t or et are added the usual terminations expressing the number and person of the imperfect, and the gender, number and case of the past participle. Thus, ich liebt-e I loved, du liebt-est thou lovedst.

The **Strong Conjugation** forms these parts by changing or modifying the vowel in the middle of the word, as in English: thus, sing, sang, sung, fingen, fang, gesungen; write, wrote, written, schreiben, schrieb, geschrieben.

The past participle has the **augment ge**, except when the first syllable of the verb is unaccented, as is the case (1) in verbs of foreign origin ending in iren, e. g. studiren, marschiren; past part. studirt, marschirt (2) in verbs compounded with one of the inseparable prefixes be, ver, er, ge, zer, ent, and sometimes with durch, über, unter, um, miß when these are not accented: as, besuchen, besuchte, besucht to visit; umarmen, umarmte, umarmt to embrace.

In separable compounds, the augment ge is placed between the prefix and the verb: as, abgeschrieben, weggeschickt.

Personal Terminations, Personalformen.

	Present Ind.	Imperf. Ind. Strong.	Imperative.	Other tenses and moods.
Sing.	1. e 2. eſt or ſt 3. et or t	1. — 2. eſt or t 3. —	1. — 2. (e) 3. —	1. e 2. eſt 3. e
Pl.	1. en 2. et or t 3. en	1. en 2. et 3. en	1. — 2. et 3. —	1. en 2. et 3. en

In eſt, the e is commonly dropped, except after d, t, or a ſibilant (ſ, ſſ, z, ſch); as, du hörſt, but du reiteſt, du beißeſt.

In et, the e is commonly dropped except after d and t: as, er hört, but leidet.

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs of Tense.

1. Haben, to have.

Indicative, Indicativ.

Subjunctive, Conjunctiv.

Present.

ich habe, I have

ich habe, that I have, or may have

du haſt, thou haſt

du habeſt, thou mayſt have

er hat, he has

er habe, he may have

wir haben, we have

wir haben, we may have

ihr habt, you have

ihr habet, you may have

ſie haben, they have

ſie haben, they may have.

Imperfect, Imperfectum.

ich hatte, I had, or was having

ich hätte, I might have, that I had

du hatteſt, thou hadſt

du hätteſt, thou mightſt have

er hatte, he had

er hätte, he might have

wir hatten, we had

wir hätten, we might have

ihr hättet, you had

ihr hättet, you might have

ſie hatten, they had

ſie hätten, they might have

Perfect, Perfectum.

ich habe gehabt, I have had

ich habe gehabt, that I have had

du haſt gehabt,

du habeſt gehabt,

er hat gehabt,

er habe gehabt,

wir haben gehabt,

wir haben gehabt,

ihr habt gehabt,

ihr habet gehabt,

ſie haben gehabt,

ſie haben gehabt.

Pluperfect, Plusquamperfectum.

ich hatte gehabt, I had had	ich hätte gehabt, I might have had,
du hättest gehabt,	du hättest gehabt, [that I had had
er hatte gehabt,	er hätte gehabt,
wir hatten gehabt,	wir hätten gehabt,
ihr hättet gehabt,	ihr hättet gehabt,
sie hatten gehabt,	sie hätten gehabt.

First Future, Futurum (absolutum).

ich werde haben, I shall have	ich werde haben, I shall have
du wirst haben, thou wilt have	du werdest haben, thou wilt have
er wird haben, he will have	er werde haben, he will have
wir werden haben, we shall have	wir werden haben; we shall have
ihr werdet haben, you will have	ihr werdet haben, you shall have
sie werden haben, they will have	sie werden haben, they shall have

Second Future, Futurum exactum.

ich werde gehabt haben, I shall	ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have
du wirst gehabt haben, [have had	du werdest gehabt haben, [had
er wird gehabt haben,	er werde gehabt haben,
wir werden gehabt haben,	wir werden gehabt haben,
ihr werdet gehabt haben,	ihr werdet gehabt haben,
sie werden gehabt haben,	sie werden gehabt haben.

First Conditional, 1. Conditionalis.

ich würde haben, I should have : or, ich hätte,
du würdest haben, thou wouldst have : or, du hättest,
er würde haben, he would have : or, er hätte,
wir würden haben, we should have : or, wir hätten,
ihr würdet haben, you would have : or, ihr hättet,
sie würden haben, they would have : or, sie hätten.

Second Conditional, 2. Conditionalis.

ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had : ich hätte gehabt,
du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst h. h. : du hättest gehabt,
er würde gehabt haben, he would have had : er hätte gehabt,
wir würden gehabt haben, we should h. h. : wir hätten gehabt,
ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would h. h. : ihr hättet gehabt,
sie würden gehabt haben, they would h. h. : sie hätten gehabt.

Imperative, Imperativ.

haben wir, laßt or)	} let us have
lasset uns haben	
habe have, du sollst haben,	} let him have
habe er	
er soll haben	
habet, haben Sie have	} let them have.
sie sollen haben	

Infinitive, Infinitiv.

Pres. haben, to have. .

Perf. gehabt haben, to have had.

Fut. haben werden, to be about to have.

Participles, Participien.

Pres. habend, having.

Pret. gehabt, had.

2. Sein, to be.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present.

ich bin, I am
du bist, thou art
er ist, he is
wir sind, we are
ihr seid, you are
sie sind, they are.

ich sei, I (may) be, that I am
du seiest, thou (mayst) be,
er sei, he (may) be
wir seien, we (may) be
ihr seiet, you (may) be
sie seien, they (may) be.

Imperfect.

ich war, I was
du warst, thou wast
er war, he was
wir waren, we were
ihr wäret, you were
sie waren, they were.

ich wäre, I might be, or (if) I were
du wärest, thou wert
er wäre, he were
wir wären, we might be, or were
ihr wäret, you might be, or were
sie wären, they might be, or were.

Perfect.

ich bin gewesen, I have been	ich sei gewesen, I might have been,
du bist gewesen &c.	du seiest gewesen &c.

Pluperfect.

ich war gewesen, I had been,	ich wäre gewesen, I might have been,
du warst gewesen &c.	that I had been
	du wärest gewesen &c.

First Future.

ich werde sein, I shall be	ich werde sein, I shall be
du wirst sein, thou wilt be	du werdest sein, thou wilt be
er wird sein, he will be	er werde sein, he will be
wir werden sein, we shall be	wir werden sein, we shall be
ihr werdet sein, you will be	ihr werdet sein, you will be
sie werden sein, they will be.	sie werden sein, they will be.

Second Future.

ich werde gewesen sein,	ich werde gewesen sein, I shall
I shall have been	have been
du wirst gewesen sein,	du werdest gewesen sein
thou wilt have been &c.	

First Conditional.

ich würde sein, I should be : or, ich wäre
du würdest sein, thou shouldst be : or, du wärest
er würde sein, he would be : or, er wäre
wir würden sein, we should be : or, wir wären
ihr würdet sein, you would be : or, ihr wäret
sie würden sein, they would be : or, sie wären.

Second Conditional.

ich würde gewesen sein, I should have been : or, ich wäre gewesen
du würdest gewesen sein, thou wouldst h. b. : or, du wärest gewesen.

Imperative

sei, be, du sollst sein	} seien wir, laßt or } let us be
sei er	
er soll sein	} let him be
	sie sollen sein let them be.

Infinitive.

Pres. sein, to be.
Perf. gewesen sein, to have been.
Fut. sein werden, to be about to be.

Participles.

Pres. seiend, being. Pret. gewesen, been.

3. Werden, to become

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present.

ich werde, I become	ich werde, that I (may) become
du wirst, thou becomest	du werdest, thou (mayst) become
er wird, he becomes	er werde, he (may) become
wir werden, we become	wir werden, we (may) become
ihr werdet, you become	ihr werdet, you (may) become
sie werden, they become.	sie werden, they (may) become.

Imperfect.

ich wurde, I became	ich würde, I might become or
du wurdest, thou becamest	du würdest, [that I become
er wurde, he became	er würde,
wir wurden, we became	wir würden,
ihr würdet, you became	ihr würdet,
sie wurden, they became.	sie würden,

Perfect.

ich bin geworden, I have	ich sei geworden, that I have
du bist geworden, [become	du seiest geworden, [become

Pluperfect.

ich war geworden, I had	ich wäre geworden, I might have
become	become, that I had become
du warst geworden &c.	du wärest geworden &c.

First Future.

ich werde werden, I shall be-	ich werde werden, I shall become
du wirst werden, [come	du werdest werden &c.

Second Future.

ich werde geworden sein,	ich werde geworden sein, I shall
I shall have become	have become
du wirst geworden sein,	du werdest geworden sein,
thou wilt have become &c.	

First Conditional.

ich würde werden, I should become
du würdest werden, thou wouldst become &c.

Second Conditional.

ich würde geworden sein, I should have become
 du würdest geworden sein, thou wouldst have become &c.

Imperative.

werde become: du sollst werden.	} let us become	werden wir, laßt or
werde er		lasset uns werden
er soll werden	} let him become	werdet, werden Sie, become ye
		sie sollen werden, let them become.

Infinitive.

Pres. werden, to become, grow, get.
 Perf. geworden sein, to have become.
 Fut. werden werden, to be about to become.

Participles.

Pres. werdend, becoming Pret. geworden, become.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb.

Lieben, to love.

Active Voice.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present.

ich liebe, I love	ich liebe, that I (may) love
du liebst, thou lovest	du liebest, thou mayst love
er liebt, he loves	er liebe, he (may) love
wir lieben, we love	wir lieben, we (may) love
ihr liebt, you love	ihr liebet, you (may) love
sie lieben, they love	sie lieben, they (may) love

Imperfect.

ich liebte I loved, or I was	ich lieb(e)te, I might love, or
loving	that I loved
du liebtest, thou lovedst	du lieb(e)test, thou mightst love
er liebte, he loved	er lieb(e)te, he might love
wir liebten, we loved	wir lieb(e)ten, we might love
ihr liebtet, you loved	ihr lieb(e)tet, you might love
sie liebten, they loved	sie lieb(e)ten, they might love

Infinitive.

geliebt werden, to be loved.
geliebt worden sein, to have been loved
werden geliebt werden, to be about to be loved.
Past Participle: geliebt, loved.

Verbs in ten and den.

Verbs whose infinitive ends in ten never drop the e before the termination; thus, in leiten to lead, fürchten to fear, warten to wait, we have:

Pres. ich leite, du leitest, er leitet, wir leiten, ihr leitet, sie leiten.
Imp. ich leitete, du leitetest, er leitete, wir leiteten &c.
Perf. ich habe geleitet, gefürchtet, gewartet.

Verbs in eſn and ern.

In those verbs which terminate in eſn and ern, e is omitted in the inflexion; but in the first pers. sing. pres. ind. the preceding e is omitted, and the final e is retained, as it is the whole of the inflexion.

Present.

Ich handle I act	ich wandre I wander
du handelst	du wanderst
er handelt	er wandert
wir handeln	wir wandern
ihr handelt	ihr wandert
sie handeln.	sie wandern.

Imperfect.

ich handelte &c. ich wanderte &c.

Participles.

handelnd, gehandelt wandernd, gewandert.

On the Tenses.

The **Present** and **Future** are used very much in the same way as in English. The present is sometimes, as in English, put for the future: ich gehe morgen nach London, I am

going to London to-morrow. *Vice versa*, the future is sometimes used for the present, particularly when the English has the sense of *I suppose, I think we shall find, probably &c.* Er wird krank sein, he is probably not well. Er wird Sie besucht haben, I suppose he has visited you. Dennoch wird er seine Pflicht gethan haben, nevertheless we shall find that he has done his duty.

The present is also used instead of the past, in order to make the description more animated. This is called the *historical present* and is more common in German than in English. Denke dir, gestern bin ich in Berlin und begegne meinem alten Freunde Herrn N., only think, yesterday I was in Berlin and met my old friend N.

The present is also used with *schon* and *seit*, for the *English perfect*, when the action is still going on. Wir wohnen schon drei Jahre in Deutschland, we have already stayed three years in Germany. Ich lerne Deutsch seit acht Monaten, I have been learning German for eight months. Sind Sie hier schon lange? have you been long here? Sind Sie in Deutschland lange gewesen? were you long in Germany? implies that the person spoken to has now left Germany.

The **imperfect** is used:

1. When the time is marked by a reference to some other action. I wrote to you, when I received your letter, ich schrieb an Sie, als ich Ihren Brief erhielt. I was just writing to you when I received your letter, ich schrieb eben an Sie, als ich Ihren Brief erhielt. I wrote the letter before I went to bed, ich schrieb den Brief, ehe ich zu Bette ging.

2. The imperfect is used in historical narrations: die Helvetier sandten Abgeordnete an die Meduer (Cæsar). Rom wurde genommen und geplündert durch den König Alaric, Rome was taken and plundered by King Alaric.

3. The imperfect is used when the action was of some continuous duration: die alten Deutschen lebten in Wäldern, the ancient Germans lived, or used to live, in forests.

4. It is used in relating recent events, when the narrator was an eye-witness to them, or means to warrant the fact;

otherwise the perfect is preferable. Thus, if we say to a German: Unser Freund ist gestern in London gewesen, our friend was yesterday in London, he will reply: Wer hat es Ihnen gesagt? who told you? But if we say: Unser Freund war gestern in London, his question will be: Wo haben Sie ihn gesehen? where did you see him? (Wittich).

The **perfect** is usually employed by the Germans in common conversation, instead of the past in English. How long were you in Germany? Wie lange sind Sie in Deutschland gewesen? Where did you dine? Wo haben Sie zu Mittag gegessen? This is particularly the case in short questions and answers. The imperfect, as we have just said, is preferable when we make a *positive* assertion.

Summary of Remarks on the Tenses.

Time absolute, according to the sense, is marked by present, perfect, future *tense*.

Three other tenses serve to indicate the time as relative, subordinate:

The *imperfect* indicates what was the case, when something simultaneously took place; it else denotes a thing that used to be, or what occurred long since in history.

Der Vater lief und fiel ihm um den Hals,
als er ihn kommen sah¹ — it goes with als.

The German *perfect* comes when people speak of things not long since passed — a year, a week; but when they come beneath the speaker's senses, the imperfect is the better of the tenses:

where did you dine? wo haben Sie gespeist?²
mein Freund ist gestern nach der Stadt gereist.³

When things have been and still are going on, the German *present* comes with seit or schon:
er führt seit vierzehn Jahren das Geschäft;⁴
ich bin hier lang' gewesen, means I've left.

We sometimes speak of things as present, though they're future still, or happened long ago:

er kommt gewiß he'll come, he's certain to be here.

Da kommt ein Weib zum Brunnen; Jesus spricht zu ihr⁵.

The *future* for the present means *you'll see*:

es wird der Wirth sein, *it is probably*. (Less.)

1. The father ran and fell on his neck, when he saw him coming. 2. Where did you dine? 3. My friend set out yesterday for the town. 4. he has been carrying on this business for fourteen years. 5. There comes a woman to the well, Jesus says to her.

On the Auxiliaries *Haben, Sein and Werden*.

1. All verbs governing a case are conjugated with *haben*, except *begegnen* to meet, *folgen* to follow, *weichen* to yield, which require *sein*: *es ist ihm ein großes Unglück begegnet*, a great misfortune has befallen him.

2. With *haben* are likewise conjugated all those intransitive verbs, which represent the subject either as active, or as in certain state or condition which does not change; for example *arbeiten* to work, *lachen* to laugh, *schreien* to scream, *sitzen* to sit, *stehen* to stand &c.

Bleiben to remain, however, has always *sein*: *die Uhr ist stehen geblieben*, the watch has stopped.

3. Intransitive verbs, which imply a passive or subjective change from one state to another, are conjugated with *sein*. Of this class are:

bersten, to burst	gerathen, to succeed	schwellen, to swell
bleiben, to remain	gerinnen, to congeal	schwinden, to vanish
brechen, to break	geschehen, to happen	sprossen, to sprout
gedeihen, to thrive	heilen, to heal	sterben, to die
fallen, to fall	reifen, to ripen	stürzen, to fall, rush
faulen, to rot	reißen, to tear	trocknen, to dry
frieren, to freeze	rusten, to rust	wachsen, to grow
gelingen, to succeed	schmelzen, to melt	werden, to become.
genesen, to recover	schwären, to fester	

The verbs *zunehmen*, to increase, and *abnehmen*, to diminish, and verbs implying to *begin* or to *leave off*: as, *anfangen*,

aufhören, beginnen, anheben, are conjugated with sein. Das Fieber hat abgenommen, the fever has abated. Das Spiel hat angefangen, the play has begun.

Verbs with the prefixes er, ver and ent, and verbs compounded with separable prepositions, which signify a change of condition, are conjugated with sein, as ertränken, erlahmen, erschaffen, erschrecken, erstarren, ersticken; verarmen, verderben, verdorren, verlöschen, veröden, verweisen; entschlafen, entstehen, entbrennen, einschlafen, auf-, an- und abbrennen, auf- und abschlagen, aufwachen.

4. Verbs of motion are conjugated with sein, when the place to or from which the motion takes place, is expressed, or when they are compounded with some preposition. Such verbs are:

eilen, to hasten	landen, to land	schiffen, to ship
fahren, to drive	laufen, to run	schwimmen, to swim
hinken, to limp	reisen, to travel	springen, to spring
jagen, to chase, hunt	reiten, to ride	stoßen, to stumble
klettern, to climb	rinnen, to run	treiben, to rub
kriechen, to creep	segeln, to sail	wandern, to wander.

Er ist aus dem Fenster gesprungen, he has leaped from the window. Ich bin ausgezogen, I have changed lodgings.

When compounded with prepositions, verbs of motion are often conjugated with sein, when the simple verb would take haben. The preposition, in fact, specifies the direction of the motion. Mein Vater ist diesen Morgen ausgefahren, my father went out in a carriage this morning. Mein Vater hat ausgefahren, would mean, my father has finished his drive; but we should say: mein Vater hat seine Fahrt vollendet. Der Dieb ist mir entsprungen, the thief has escaped me. Wir sind gestern vom Lande zurückgekehrt, we returned yesterday from the country.

5. In other cases, when the direction of the motion is not expressed, the agent is described as having some active employment requiring motion, or as moving in some particular way, and not merely as locomotive. In such a case haben is more commonly used. Er hat or ist viel gereist, he is a

travelled man. Der Kutscher hat in Wien zehn Jahre gefahren, the coachman has driven ten years in Vienna. Er hat lange gehinkt, he has limped for a long time. Du hast vor ihm gekrochen, you have cringed to him (crawled before him). Er hat or ist diesen Morgen geritten, he has take a ride this morning. Dieser Geßell hat or ist gewandert, this journeyman has made his tour.

Werden.

Werden is used for three different purposes in German:

1. It is used as a principal verb, meaning to *become*, to *grow*, or as we express it in English, to *get*, to *turn*. He is getting sleepy, er wird schläfrig. Er wird alt, he is getting old; es wird spät, it is getting late.

2. Secondly, werden is used as an auxiliary, to form the future tenses: er wird kommen, he will come.

3. The passive voice is merely the verb werden with the past participle of another verb. In the compound preterite tenses, the ge of geworden is dropped: ich bin geliebt worden (not geworden), I have been loved.

The Passive Voice.

The passive voice is less common in German than in English. It can only be used when the verb governs the accusative case. It is used in preference:

1. When the agent is to be made more prominent than the object: as, he has been killed by lightning, er ist vom Blitz erschlagen worden; princes are constantly surrounded by flatterers, Fürsten werden unaufhörlich von Schmeichlern belagert.

2. When the agent is not mentioned. Der Straßburger Münster ist im 14. Jahrhundert erbaut worden, the cathedral of Strasburg was built in the 14th century.

Its place is supplied:

1. By the active voice. He was thanked for this by my friend, dafür dankte ihm mein Freund. The king was followed by his ministers, dem Könige folgten die Minister.

The infinitive active is often used idiomatically instead of the infinitive passive or past participle in English. Ich

höre erzählen, I hear it said. Es ist leicht zu thun, it is easy to do or to be done. Er läßt sich überreden, he lets himself be persuaded.

2. The place of the passive is also supplied by the reflective form. Das Buch hat sich gefunden, the book has been found. Es verbreitet sich ein Gerücht, a report is spread.

3. Also by the indefinite man. His attorney was sent for, man schickte nach seinem Advokaten. Age must be honoured, das Alter muß man ehren. I was laughed at, man lachte über mich. It must be confessed, man muß gestehen.

As the verb *to be* is used in English to express the present passive and also the perfect in a neuter sense, it is important to distinguish between these tenses in translating. *The house is built* may mean *the house is being built* (present), when it is translated: das Haus wird gebaut; or it may mean *the house has been built*, when it is to be translated by the perfect: das Haus ist gebaut worden, or das Haus ist gebaut. The form with *worden* is used, when we speak of the doing of the action as having been finished; that without *worden*, when we speak of the resulting state. Er ist getödtet worden, he has been killed; er ist getödtet, he is dead by violent means. Napoleon ist in Korsika geboren, Napoleon was born in Corsica. Der Tisch wird bedeckt, the table is being covered; der Tisch wurde bedeckt, the table was being covered, *some one was covering it*; der Tisch ist bedeckt, the table is (already) covered.

Summary of Remarks on the Auxiliaries

Haben, Sein and Werden.

Of verbs that govern cases only three:
Begegnen, weichen, folgen,¹ go with "be",
but neuters, meaning passive change, take sein
except *begin* and *end*, *increase*, *decline*:²
er ist gestorben, or er ist genesen.
Es hat begonnen. Ist er krank gewesen?³
Sein goes with bleiben, gehen, kommen come
and other verbs of moving to or from,

if place is stated; else we have a notion of moving action, not mere locomotion, and *haben* then is used; with neuters too, which tell what active things or persons do: *er hat gebellt*⁴ and so with *lauten*, *weinen*,⁵ and *sitzen*, *liegen*, *stehen*, *hängen*, *scheinen*.⁶ *Mein Freund ist fortgegangen*,⁷ in his walk: *hat fortgefahren*⁸ in his work, or talk. But compound neuter verbs have often got in perfect *sein*, though simple verb has not *die Blume hat geblüht* but *ist verblüht*;⁹ *das Feuer hat gezündet*, *ist verglüht*. The past may drop these verbs in poetry: *und als er kaum gesprochen*, scarce had he.¹⁰

Werden.

Distinguish in the passive voice between *ich werde* present and the perfect *bin*, when *worden* for *geworden* is left out: *es ist gebaut worden* — *ist gebaut*. *er ist getödtet* rather has the sense of state resulting — *dead from violence*.

1. To meet, to yield, to follow. 2. *anfangen*, *beginnen*, *anheben*, to begin: *aufhören*, to cease. 3. he is dead, he is recovered, it has begun, has he been ill? 4. he had bawled or barked. 5. to sound (of news), to weep. 6. to sit, lie, stand, hang, appear. 7. my friend has walked on. 8. has continued or gone on in his work. 9. the flower has bloomed, has ceased glowing or glowed away. 10. scarcely had he spoken. Here *hatte* is omitted.

The Auxiliaries of Mood.

Possibility in general is expressed by *können*; necessity in general by *müssen*. *Dürfen* expresses liberty and *sollen* obligation, as dependent on the will of another, not the subject of the sentence. *Mögen* expresses the liking and *wollen* the will of the subject; but *mögen* may also express what the speaker allows. *Lassen* to let, order, get, belongs to this last class. See notes A, B, C after the paradigms.

1. Können to be able. Possibility in general.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Ich kann	ich konnte	ich könne	ich könnte
du kannst	du konntest	du könntest	du könntest
er kann	er konnte	er könne	er könnte
wir können	wir konnten	wir können	wir könnten
ihr könnt (könnt)	ihr konntet	ihr könnt	ihr könntet
sie können	sie konnten	sie können	sie könnten.
Perfect.	ich habe gekonnt. ich habe gehen können.	ich habe gekonnt. ich habe gehen können.	
Plup.	ich hatte gekonnt. ich hatte gehen können.	ich hätte gekonnt, I could have. ich hätte gehen können.	
Future.	ich werde können.	ich werde können.	
2nd Fut.	ich werde gekonnt haben, ich werde haben gehen können (C).	ich werde gekonnt haben, ich werde haben gehen können (C).	
1st Cond.	ich würde können, usually ich könnte.		
2nd Cond.	ich würde gekonnt haben, usually ich hätte gekonnt, ich würde haben (ich hätte) gehen können.		

2. Müssen, to be obliged. Necessity in general.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Ich muß	ich mußte	ich müsse	ich müßte
du mußt	du mußttest	du müßtest	du müßttest
er muß	er mußte	er müsse	er müßte
wir müssen	wir mußten	wir müssen	wir müßten
ihr müßet (müßt)	ihr müßtet	ihr müßet	ihr müßtet
sie müssen	sie mußten	sie müssen	sie müßten.
Perfect.	ich habe gemußt, ich habe gehen müssen.	ich habe gemußt. ich habe gehen müssen.	
Plup.	ich hatte gemußt, ich hatte gehen müssen.	ich hätte gemußt, ich hätte gehen müssen	
1st Fut.	ich werde müssen.	ich werde müssen.	
2nd Fut.	ich werde gemußt haben ich werde haben gehen müssen (C).	ich werde gemußt haben, ich werde haben gehen müssen (C).	
1st Cond.	ich würde müssen, usually ich müßte.		

2nd Cond. ich würde gemußt haben, usually ich hätte gemußt,
ich würde haben (ich hätte) gehen müssen.

Liberty, Obligation.

1. Dürfen, to be allowed, to dare.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Ich darf	ich durfte	ich dürfe	ich dürfte
du darfst	du durftest	du dürfest	du dürftest
er darf	er durfte	er dürfe	er dürfte
wir dürfen	wir durften	wir dürfen	wir dürften
ihr dürfet (dürft)	ihr durftet	ihr dürfet	ihr dürftet
sie dürfen	sie durften	sie dürfen	sie dürften.
Perfect.	ich habe gedurft, ich habe reden dürfen. (B)	ich habe gedurft, ich habe reden dürfen.	
Plup.	ich hatte gedurft, ich hatte reden dürfen.	ich hätte gedurft ich hätte reden dürfen.	
1 st Fut.	ich werde dürfen,	ich werde dürfen.	
2nd Fut.	ich werde gedurft haben.	ich werde gedurft haben.	
1 st Cond.	ich würde dürfen, usually ich dürfte.		
2nd Cond.	ich würde gedurft haben, usually ich hätte gedurft, ich würde nicht haben (ich hätte nicht) sagen dürfen. (C)		

2. Sollen, to be under an obligation to.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Ich soll	ich sollte	ich solle	ich sollte
du sollst	du solltest	du sollest	du solltest
er soll	er sollte	er solle	er sollte
wir sollen	wir sollten	wir sollen	wir sollten
ihr sollet (sollt)	ihr solltet	ihr sollet	ihr solltet
sie sollen	sie sollten	sie sollen	sie sollten
Perfect.	ich habe gesollt, (B) ich habe gehen sollen.	ich habe gesollt, ich habe gehen sollen.	
Plup.	ich hatte gesollt, ich hatte gehen sollen.	ich hätte gesollt, ich hätte gehen sollen.	
1 st Fut.	ich werde sollen,	ich werde sollen.	
2nd Fut.	ich werde gesollt haben.	ich werde gesollt haben.	

1st Cond. ich würde jellen, usually ich jellte.

2nd Cond. ich würde gejellt haben, usually ich hätte gejellt.

Wish, Determination.

1. Mögen, to be permitted, to like.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
ich mag	ich mochte	ich möge	ich möchte
du magst	du mochtest	du mögest	du möchtest
er mag	er mochte	er möge	er möchte
wir mögen	wir mochten	wir mögen	wir möchten
ihr möget (mögt)	ihr mochtet	ihr möget	ihr möchtet
sie mögen	sie mochten	sie mögen	sie möchten
Perfect.	ich habe gemocht, ich habe gehen mögen. (B)	ich habe gemocht, ich habe gehen mögen.	
Plup.	ich hatte gemocht, ich hatte gehen mögen	ich hätte gemocht, ich hätte gehen mögen.	
1st Fut.	ich werde mögen.	ich werde mögen.	
2nd Fut.	ich werde gemocht haben,	ich werde gemocht haben,	
1st Cond.	ich würde mögen, usually ich möchte.		
2nd Cond.	ich würde gemocht haben, usually ich hätte gemocht, ich würde ihm haben (or ich hätte ihm) helfen mögen, I should have been inclined. (C)		

2. Wollen, to be willing.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Ich will	ich wollte	ich wolle	ich wollte
du willst	du wolltest	du wollest	du wolltest
er will	er wollte	er wolle	er wollte
wir wollen	wir wollten	wir wollen	wir wollten
ihr wollet(wollt)	ihr wolltet	ihr wollet	ihr wolltet
sie wollen	sie wollten	sie wollen	sie wollten
Perfect.	ich habe gewollt, ich habe gehen wollen. (B)	ich habe gewollt, ich habe gehen wollen,	
Plup.	ich hatte gewollt, ich hatte gehen wollen.	ich hätte gewollt, ich hätte gehen wollen.	
1st Fut.	ich werde wollen.	ich werde wollen.	

2nd Fut. ich werde gewollt haben, ich werde gewollt haben,
er wird es nicht haben verkaufen wollen, I suppose he was

1st Cond. ich würde wollen, or ich wollte. [not inclined to sell it.

2nd Cond. ich würde gewollt haben, or ich hätte gewollt,
ich würde haben (or ich hätte) gehen wollen. (C)

3. Lassen, to let, to order.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Present.	Imperfect.	Present.	Imperfect.
Ich lasse	ich ließ	ich lasse	ich ließe
du lässest	du ließeest	du lässeest	du ließeest
er läßt	er ließ	er lasse	er ließe
wir lassen	wir ließen	wir lassen	wir ließen
ihr lasset (laßt)	ihr ließt	ihr lasset	ihr ließeet
sie lassen	sie ließen	sie lassen	sie ließen
Perfect. ich habe gelassen,		ich habe gelassen,	
ich habe ihn gehen lassen. (B)		ich habe ihn gehen lassen.	
Plupfct. ich hatte gelassen,		ich hätte gelassen,	
ich hatte ihn gehen lassen.		ich hätte ihn gehen lassen.	
1st Fut. ich werde lassen.		ich werde lassen.	
2nd Fut. ich werde gelassen haben,		ich werde gelassen haben.	
1st Cond. ich würde lassen, or ich ließe.			
2nd Cond. ich würde gelassen haben, or ich hätte gelassen,			
ich würde einen neuen Anzug (suit) haben machen			
Imperative: laß, pl. lasset, lassen Sie.			[lassen. (C)

(A) Observe that, when the vowel is modified in the infinitive, it is also modified in the plural of the present, and in the entire subjunctive; that sollen, wollen and lassen, which do not modify the infinitive, do not modify these other parts.

(B) In the compound tenses, when one of these auxiliaries follows the infinitive of another verb which depends on it, the infinitive of the auxiliary verbs is used instead of its past participle. Ich habe gehen wollen (instead of gewollt), aber ich habe es nicht gekonnt, I wished to go, but I have not been able. Er hat gehen müssen (instead of gemußt) obgleich er es nicht gewollt hat, he has been obliged to go, although he did not wish.

(C) When three infinitives in this manner come together at the end of the sentence, *haben* takes precedence of the others; but, with this exception, their order is the reverse of the English: *er würde den Brief nicht haben (or er hätte den Brief nicht) schreiben können; er sollte mir eine solche Antwort nicht haben sagen lassen*, he should not have sent me such an answer. *Ich habe ihm Briefe schreiben helfen müssen*, I have been obliged to assist him to write letters.

Remarks on the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

Können, Müssen.

Können denotes natural power or general ability to do anything; and *müssen* denotes necessity generally. *Der Vogel kann fliegen*, the bird can fly. *Alle Menschen müssen sterben*, all men must die. *Sie müssen Sich ankleiden*, you must dress yourself. I cannot but laugh, *ich muß lachen*. I could not forbear mentioning it, *ich konnte nicht umhin zu sagen*. As *können* and *müssen* are the general words, we find them used instead of *mögen* and *sollen*. He may go, *er kann gehen*.

Dürfen, Sollen.

Dürfen implies power or right founded on law, or on the permission of another; *sollen* denotes an obligation arising from a sense of duty, or from the command of another. *Wir dürfen spielen*, we are allowed to play. *Du sollst deinen Nächsten lieben wie dich selbst*, thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

Dürfen sometimes means *to dare*. *Wir dürfen nicht alles sagen*, we dare not say all.

Must in negative sentences is translated by *dürfen*: I must not, *ich darf nicht*; you must not play, *Sie dürfen nicht spielen*. *May* in interrogative sentences is translated by *dürfen*. May I? may you? *darf ich? dürfen Sie?* May one ask what you are thinking about? *darf man fragen, woran Sie denken?*

I shall or *we shall* in the first person, denoting mere futurity, is rendered *ich werde, wir werden*. In questions we

may also say *werde ich?* but when *shall I?*, *shall we?* mean *am I to?* or *are we to?* we must translate by *soll ich?* *sollen wir?* In the other persons, *shall* implies obligation, and is to be translated by *sollen*: thou shalt not steal, *du sollst nicht stehlen*.

Wollen, to be willing.

Wollen denotes the *will*, *intention* or *determination* of the subject of the sentence. *Er hat sein Pferd nicht verkaufen wollen*, he did not wish to sell his horse. The English verb *will* has this sense in the first person; but in the second and third persons, it means simple futurity. Accordingly *I will*, *we will* are translated *ich will*, *wir wollen*; but *thou wilt*, *he will*, *they will* are translated *du wirst*, *er wird*, *sie werden*. In like manner, when *would* expresses determination, it is translated by *wollte*; but when *would* expresses mere sequence, it is translated by *würde*. *Er würde bleiben, wenn er könnte*, he would remain, if he could.

Wollen has an imperative: *wolle nur*, only be willing.

The English forms of expression: *I am to*, *he is to* &c. are translated by *wollen* when the subject determines or means to do, and by *sollen* or *müssen*, when the obligation depends on the will of another. *I am to go*, *I have decided to go*, *ich will gehen*. *My son is to learn German*, *mein Sohn soll* or *muß Deutsch lernen*. *I am to (I must) stay at home*, *ich soll zu Hause bleiben*.

The forms *have to*, *am to be*, are also rendered by *haben* and *sein* followed by *zu*; but observe that *am to be* is in German translated by the infinitive active. *Ich habe einige Briefe zu schreiben*, *I have some letters to write*. *Der Brief ist nicht zu lesen*, the letter is not to be read, it cannot be read. *Eine Veränderung ist sehr zu wünschen*, a change is much to be desired. *Was ist zu thun?* what is to be done.

Eben wollen, **eben sollen**, means *to be just going to*, *to be on the point of being*, and are equivalent to *im Begriff sein*, *auf dem Punkte stehen*. *He was just going to depart*, *er*

wollte eben abreißen. Der Verbrecher sollte eben hingerichtet werden, als . . . the criminal was just about to be executed when. . . .

Mögen.

1. Mögen expresses what is agreeable to the will of the subject, and is translated *to like*. In this sense, it is used especially in negative sentences; or, if the sentence be positive, in the conditional mood, instead of gern haben or gern wollen. Ich möchte ihn sehen, I should like to see him. Ich mag den Brief nicht lesen, I do not like to read the letter. Ich habe nicht spielen mögen, I did not like to play. It is more usual, however, in affirmative sentences to translate *like* by gern, comparative lieber, superlative am liebsten. I like playing, ich spiele gern. I like playing better than singing, ich spiele lieber als ich singe. Ich habe ihn gern, I like him. Er sieht ihn gern, he likes to see him. Er geht gern spazieren, he likes to take a walk.

2. Mögen denotes that power or permission is granted by the speaker. Du magst zu Hause bleiben, you may stay at home, I give you permission to do so. In this sense, it is sometimes translated *let*. Mögen sie lachen, let them laugh. Er möge sich hüten mich zu stören, let him take care not to disturb me.

Lassen.

Lassen means (1) to leave, let, permit. Ich habe ihn gehen lassen, I have let him go. Ich lasse Ihnen das Buch, I leave you the book or I let you have it at a price. In this sense, it is used to form the first pers. pl. of the imperative; thus we say: laß uns gehen, laßt uns gehen or lassen Sie uns gehen. (2) Lassen signifies *to make, to get, to order, to bid*. Sie haben uns lange warten lassen, you have made us wait long. Ich habe ihn kommen lassen, I have ordered or got him to come. In the sense of *to get done* or *have done* the verb is followed in German by the infinitive active, not by the past participle passive, as in English. Ich habe ein Paar Schuhe machen lassen, I have got or had a new pair of shoes

made. (3) *Sich lassen*, is translated *may be, is to be*. *Das läßt sich nicht begreifen*, that cannot be understood.

When the auxiliaries *might, could, would, should, ought* express a thing which was possible but which has not taken place, they are followed, in English, by the infinitive with *have* (the perf. inf.). Thus we say: he could have gone, we should have come, I would have written, implying that he did not go, that I did not write. The German idiom, however, is different. It puts the auxiliary in the pluperfect subjunctive and the verb that depends on it in the pres. infinitive; thus, *er hätte gehen können; wir hätten kommen sollen; ich hätte einen Brief schreiben wollen*.

Logical Possibility, Necessity, or Representation.

The six auxiliary verbs of mood, *können, dürfen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen*, are used likewise to express *logical* possibility and necessity, that is, not a *real* ability or necessity to do something, but a *belief* either that a thing *must* be so, or that it *may* be so.

Contingency or logical possibility is expressed by *können, mögen*, and the imperfect subjunctive of *dürfen*. Thus, *er kann ein Betrüger sein*, he may be a cheat. *Es mag wahr sein*, it may be true. *Das dürfte wohl (or vielleicht) zu schwer sein*, that may be too difficult.

In like manner *müssen* denotes logical necessity, that is, our belief that a thing is necessarily so. *Er muß sehr reich sein*, he must be very rich.

Sollen and *wollen* are used in a somewhat similar way; *sollen* denotes that something is represented as a fact or that what is affirmed to be true is admitted by the speaker for the time; *wollen* denotes that the subject of the sentence represents himself to be something, pretends to be something, wishes it to be believed about himself. *Er soll reich sein*, he is said to be very rich. *Einige wollen ihn gesehen haben*, some pretend to have seen him. *Er wollte es gehört haben*, he pretended to have heard it.

In the sense of logical possibility, necessity or representation, just explained, these verbs are followed by the perfect infinitive in German, exactly as in English. He may have set out already, that is, it may be that he has set out already (*fieri potest ut*), *er kann schon abgereist sein*. He must have taken it, *er muß es genommen haben*. But *er hätte schon abreißen können*, means, *he might have set out already*, he might have been able to set out already; *er hätte es nehmen sollen*, he would have been obliged to take it. Again, *er hat es nehmen können*, he has been able to take it, *er hat schon abreißen können*, he has been able to set out already. The same is the case with *sollen* and *wollen*. *Der Feind soll sich zurückgezogen haben*, the enemy is said to have retreated; but, *der Feind hätte sich zurückziehen sollen*, the enemy ought to have retreated. *Er wollte es gehört haben*, he pretended to have heard it; but *er hat es nicht hören wollen*, he did not wish to hear it.

The Imperfect Subjunctive of these verbs is sometimes used instead of the present indicative to render the statement less positive, and to imply some polite deference to the person addressed. This is the case, both when these verbs signify real ability or necessity, and also in their logical sense. *Könnten sie mir wohl sagen?* could you kindly tell me? *Sie könnten mir wohl erlauben*, perhaps you might allow me. *Dürfte ich Sie bitten?* might I ask you? *Sie müßten* or *Sie sollten ihn besuchen*, you must pay him a visit. *Ich möchte* or *ich wollte lieber spielen als singen*, I would rather play than sing. *Wollten Sie wohl die Güte haben, mir diese Gefälligkeit zu erweisen* (or *und mir diese Gefälligkeit erweisen*), would you please do me this favour.

Also in their logical sense, the imperfect subjunctive may be used instead of the present. *Alles könnte*, or *möchte*, or *dürfte falsch sein*, all may be false. *Er könnte*, or *möchte*, or *dürfte es vergessen haben*, he may have forgotten it. In these sentences, *könnte* represents the action as merely possible, *möchte* expresses some probability and *dürfte* expresses still more likelihood. *Er dürfte sich diesmal geirrt haben*, he has

very likely been mistaken. Sie dürften uns wohl mißverstanden haben, I should think you have misunderstood us, which is rather a polite way of making an assertion.

Verbs of *wishing*, *asking*, and *hoping* sometimes take the subjunctive of *mögen*, instead of the bare subjunctive. Ich wünsche von ganzem Herzen, daß es dir gelingen möge, I wish with all my heart that you may succeed. It is also used for the subjunctive in sentences of purpose, and in the expression of a wish. Er sprach laut aus, damit man ihn nicht mißverstände or mißverstehen möchte or könnte, he spoke loud, that no one might misunderstand him. Möge euch der Himmel ein langes Leben schenken! may Heaven grant you a long life! Möchten Sie so gut sein, would you be so good.

The imperfect subjunctive of *sollen* is often used (1) with verbs of commanding instead of the mere subjunctive; der König befahl, daß man eine Brücke bauen sollte, the king ordered a bridge to be built; (2) in conditional sentences, when the verb in the principal sentence is a definite future, or an imperative, and not the conditional: wenn er kommen sollte (or sollte er kommen), so will ich ihm sagen (or so sagen Sie ihm), if he comes, I will tell him (or tell him). But wenn ich es wüßte, würde (or so würde) ich Ihnen sagen, if I knew it, I would tell you. (3) It is used instead of the present subjunctive of the verb after *zu... als daß*. Er ist zu ehrlich als daß er eine Unwahrheit sagen sollte, or zu ehrlich eine Unwahrheit zu sagen, he is too honourable to tell an untruth (4) Sollte is also used in questions expressing doubt or surprise. Sollte das wahr sein? can that be true?

The auxiliaries of mood are often used elliptically. Können Sie Deutsch (sprechen)? can you speak German? Ich muß zurück (gehen), I must return. Es muß heraus! it must be said! Was soll ich (thun)? what am I to do? Was soll ich damit (thun)? what am I to do with it? Was sollen diese Thränen (heißen)? what mean these tears? Was soll mir ein eitler Titel (nützen)? of what service to me is an empty vain title? Er soll aus dem Hause (gehen), he is to leave the house. Wohin wollen Sie (gehen)? where are you going? Ich will

nach Hause, I am going home. Was will er damit (thun)? what is he going to do with it? Was willst du hier? what are you doing here? Er will es, he will have it so.

The position, which these auxiliaries occupy in the sentence, will be explained in the chapter on the Arrangement of Words.

Summary of Remarks on the Auxiliaries of Mood.

In general müssen means *necessity*,
and können general *ability*;

ich soll, when duty binds: *I have to do*,

ich darf, when other men allow me to;

ich darf nicht, mean *I must* with negative,
and darf ich? *may I?* interrogative.

Ich will *I will* — I mean to do or be;

ich werde, *shall*, is mere futurity.

We are or *mean to do*: wir wollen

we are or *have to do*: wir sollen.

Wir wollen eben¹, sollen eben², if

wir sind auf dem Punkte oder im Begriff.³

The speaker, when he gives consent, will say:

du magst, er mag es thun, for *may*.

I *like*, ich mag — but more with negatives;

use gern: ich spiele gern, with positives.

Wir lassen means *we leave*, *we order*, *get*:

laß, laßet, Lassen Sie uns gehen — *let*.

When *have* comes after *might*, *could*, *would*, or

translate by hätte and subjunctive mood: [*should*,

er hätte kaufen sollen, should have bought,

as though we said in English *he had ought*.

The infinitive, not participle past,

comes after an infinitive, and last:

er hat, er hätte sehen können mean

he has been able to, he might have seen.

1. We are just going to do. 2. we are just about to undergo something. 3. we are on the point.

Logical Possibility and Necessity.

When something may or must be now the case, or at some previous time have taken place, the sense is logical: we merely *know* it *must*, or else suppose it *may be so*. These verbs have then the English idiom: er mag gekommen sein he may have come, er muß gestorben sein he must be dead, er will, he says he is; er soll, he's said.

Imperfect Subjunctive.

To give a doubtful, deferential, sense, employ subjunctive mood, imperfect tense: Sie könnten, möchten, dürften wohl you could: the first has least — the last, most likelihood. Ich möchte gern, ich wollte, wünschte *would*; ich müßte think I must; ich sollte *should*.

Irregular Verbs, die starke Conjugation.

Verbs are called *irregular*, or are said to belong to the *strong conjugation*, when they do not form their past tenses by adding *et*, but by modifying the vowel of the root. Thus, sprechen, to speak, makes the imperfect sprach. The past participle ends in *en*: gesprochen,

Classification of Irregular Verbs.

Verbs belonging to the strong Conjugation are here divided into four classes, according to the vowel in the infinitive, and the changes, which it undergoes in the past tenses. The classification is substantially the same as in the best German Grammars, as, for instance, in Becker's Grammar; but three of Becker's classes, which contain the same vowel *e* or *i* in the infinitive, are here reckoned as one class, with three subdivisions.

In the **First Class**, the vowel of the infinitive is *e* or *i*, which becomes *a* in the imperfect. There are three sub-

divisions of this class: the *first* of these comprehends those which have *e* for the vowel of the past participle, and the *second* those which have *o*. We have *e* in the past participle, when one consonant or double *ß* follows; and *o* when two consonants follow. Double *ß* is exceptional; we have seen, in the chapter on pronunciation, that it is often written instead of single *ß*, to preserve its sharp sound, for *ß* becomes flat, if written singly between vowels. Thus, *tretten*, *trat*, *getreten*, to tread; *sitzen*, *saß*, *gesessen*, to sit, are examples of the first subdivision, to which belongs also *liegen*, *lag*, *gelegen*, to lie. *brechen*, *brach*, *gebrochen*, to break; *spinnen*, *spann*, *gesponnen*, to spin — are examples of the second, to which belong also *kommen*, *kam*, *gekommen*, to come, and *gebären*, *gebar* *geboren*, to bear. The *third* subdivision comprehends those which have *nd*, *ng* and *nf* after the vowel in the middle of the verb; these have *u* in the past participle: as, *sinken*, *sank*, *gesunken*; *finden*, *fand*, *gefunden*; *singen*, *sang*, *gesungen*.

The **Second Class**, containing *ei* in the infinitive, changes this into *ie*, (long *i*), when one consonant follows in the middle of the word; and into short *i*, when there are two — the principle being, that a vowel is shortened by two consonants coming at the end of the syllable: as, *leihen*, *lieh*, *geliehen*, to lend; *schleichen*, *schlich*, *geschlichen*, to sneak. When *t*, *ð*, *f* come in the present, they are doubled in the past, *ð* becoming *tt*: as, *schneiden*, *schnitt*, *geschnitten*, to cut; *pfeifen*, *piff*, *gepiffen*, to whistle.

The **Third Class** comprehends verbs having *ie* for the vowel of the infinitive, also those with the modified vowels *ä*, *ö*, *ü* and most with the diphthong *au*; it has *o* for the vowel of both the past tenses — long *o* (according to the ordinary rule of pronunciation) when one consonant follows in the middle of the word, and short *o* when two follow: as, *schieben*, *schob*, *geschoben*, to push; *frieden*, *fröð*, *gefroðen*, to creep; *sieden*, *sott*, *gesotten*, to boil; *schwören*, *schwör*, *ge-*

ſchwören, to swear; lügen, lög, gelögen, to tell lies. To this class also belong the following verbs having e or i in the present: bewegen to induce, drefchen¹ to thresh, fechten to fight, fledchten to plait, to twist, heben to lift, glimmen to glimmer, flimmen to climb, melken to milk, pflegen to practise, quellen to spring forth, ſcheren to shear, ſchmelzen to melt, ſchwellen to swell, weben to weave¹; and one having a, erſchallen, erſcholl, erſchollen, to resound. Liegen and gebären, as has been mentioned, belong to the first class.

The **Fourth Class** comprehends all the verbs having a for the vowel of the infinitive (except erſchallen, erſcholl, erſchollen); and in addition to them hauen to hew, heißen to call or be called, laufen to run, rufen to call, to summon, and ſtoßen to push. The past participle of this class has the same vowel as the infinitive; the imperfect has ie or u, making two subdivisions. Those which take ie in the imperfect tense are: the five verbs just mentioned — hauen, hieß, gehauen; heißen, hieß, geheßen; laufen lief, gelaufen; rufen, rief, gerufen and ſtoßen, ſtieß, geſtoßen; and about half of those verbs which contain a in the infinitive; namely, blaſen, bließ, geblaſen, to blow; braten, briet, gebraten, to roast; fallen, fiel, gefallen, to fall; fangen, fing, gefangen, to take; halten, hielt, gehalten, to hold; hangen, hing, gehangen, to hang; laſſen, ließ, ge-laſſen, to let; rathen rieth, gerathen, to advise; ſchlafen, ſchlief, geſchlafen, to sleep¹. Gehen, ging, gegangen, to go, is also classified with these.

The *second* subdivision takes u in the imperfect: namely fahren, fuhr, gefahren, to drive; graben, grub, gegraben, to dig; laden, lud, geladen, to load; ſchlagen, ſchlug, geſchlagen, to beat; tragen, trug, getragen, to bear or carry; wachſen, wuchs, gewachſen, to grow or increase; waſchen, wuſch, gewaſchen, to wash¹.

Baſen, to bake, makes the imperfect buſ and baſte, past part. gebaſen. Mahlen, mahlte, gemahlen, to grind; but malen,

1. These lists are given below in rhyme. They require special attention. Drefchen, imperf. droſch or draſch.

malte, gemalt, to paint. Falten to fold, falzen to salt, spalten to split, and schrotten to grind coarsely, form the imperfect regularly in *te*, but the past part may be either weak or strong: gefaltet or gefalten; gefalzt or gefalzen; gespaltet or gespalten; geschrotet or geschrotten.

Table showing the Vowels in Strong Verbs and their Modifications.

	Infinitive.	Imperfect.	Past Participle.
Class I.	e or i	α	e, o, u
Class II.	ei	i or ie	as in imperfect
Class III.	ie (ä, ö, ü, au, e)	ö or ö	as in imperfect
Class IV.	α &c.	u or ie	as in infinitive

How to remember the Table and the Principal Parts.

By means of the first three following Observations, the student will be able at once to write down the Table from memory; and if he has carefully noted the few irregular verbs, which do not follow these rules exactly, he will be able, by means of the table and the other Observations, to tell any part of any given strong verb. This sort of exercise will be found useful, as an introduction to the subject.

Observations.

Obs. 1. In the Table showing the vowels in Strong Verbs, it will be observed that the vowels e and i of the First Class are combined in the Second, so as to form the diphthong ei; that in the Third Class, the order of these vowels is reversed, so as to form the diphthong ie; and that the Fourth Class contains the verbs having α as the vowel of the root, and one or two having o and u.

Obs. 2. If we read the first line of the table across, the order of the vowels in the imp. tense and past part is α, e, o, u; and if we read the column under the imperfect downwards, the order of the vowels is α, i, o, u. Both these orders are identical with the natural order of the

vowels, i being omitted in the upper line, and e in the down line. They can thus be easily remembered.

Obs. 3. The past participle in the Second and Third Classes has the same vowel as the imperfect; the past participle of the Fourth Class has the same vowel as the infinitive.

Obs. 4. The rules of pronunciation require that the vowels i and o in the past tenses of the second and third conjugation should be long, when a single consonant follows; and short, when two consonants follow. Double s is exceptional in the first class.

Obs. 5. Irregular or strong verbs change e into i in the second and third pers. sing. pres. ind., and in the second pers. sing. of the imperative, which in this case only drops final e. Those which have a in the infinitive modify the vowel in the second and third pers. sing. pres. ind., but not in the imperative. Thus ich gebe, du giebst, er giebt, wir geben &c. imperative gieb; ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt, wir fahren &c., imperative fahre. The following verbs are exceptions retaining the vowels unaltered: bewegen to induce, gehen, to go, genesen to recover, heben to lift, melken to milk, pflegen to practise, schaffen to make, scheren to shear; stehen, to stand, weben to weave, erschallen to sound, most verbs containing the diphthong au, and the verbs belonging to the mixed conjugation. Falten, malen and spalten are to be considered as weak verbs, which do not modify the vowel. Ich stoße, du stößest, er stößt, imp. stoße.

In present — second, third — instead of a and e — ä, i are said;
the imperative has i for e
and then drops final e away
except er schafft, er schraubt, er geht,
er schnaubt, er haut, er saugt, er steht,
erschallt, bewegt, er schert, er webt,
genest, er pflegt, er melkt, er hebt,
er brennt, and others, which belong
to form combining weak and strong.

Obs. 6. The imperfect subjunctive modifies *a*, *o* and *u* in strong verbs. In the first class, a few verbs take *ö* and *ü* in the imperfect subjunctive instead of *ä*. The reason is that these verbs originally had *o* or *u* in the imperfect ind., not *a*. These irregularities are mentioned in the verses which follow.

Conjugation of Two Irregular Verbs, *sprechen* to speak, and *bleiben* to remain.

Indicative.		Present.	Subjunctive.	
Ich spreche	ich bleibe	ich spreche	ich bleibe	
du sprichst	du bleibst	du sprichst	du bleibest	
er spricht	er bleibt	er spreche	er bleibe	
wir sprechen	wir bleiben	wir sprechen	wir bleiben	
ihr sprecht	ihr bleibt	ihr sprecht	ihr bleibet	
sie sprechen	sie bleiben	sie sprechen	sie bleiben	

Imperfect.

ich sprach	ich blieb	ich spräche	ich bliebe
du sprachst	du bliebst	du sprächest	du bliebest
er sprach	er blieb	er spräche	er bliebe
wir sprachen	wir blieben	wir sprächen	wir blieben
ihr sprachet	ihr bliebt	ihr sprächet	ihr bliebet
sie sprachen	sie blieben	sie sprächen	sie blieben

Perfect.

ich habe gesprochen	ich habe gesprochen
ich bin geblieben	ich sei geblieben

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gesprochen	ich hätte gesprochen
ich war geblieben	ich wäre geblieben

First Future.

ich werde sprechen, bleiben	ich werde sprechen, bleiben
-----------------------------	-----------------------------

Second Future.

ich werde gesprochen haben	ich werde gesprochen haben
ich werde geblieben sein	ich werde geblieben sein

First Conditional.

ich würde sprechen, bleiben : or ich spräche, ich bliebe

Second Conditional.

ich würde gesprochen haben or : ich hätte gesprochen

ich würde geblieben sein or : ich wäre geblieben

Imperative.

Infinitive.

S. 2.	sprich	bleibe	Pr.	sprechen, bleiben
3.	spreche er	bleibe er	Perf.	gesprochen haben geblieben sein
P. 1.	sprechen wir, laßt	bleiben wir, laßt		
	lasset uns sprechen.	lasset uns bleiben	Fut.	sprechen werden bleiben werden
2.	sprechet ihr	bleibet		
	sprechen Sie	bleiben Sie		
3.	sie sollen sprechen.	sie sollen bleiben		

Participles.

Pres. sprechend, bleibend Pret. gesprochen, geblieben.

NB. Two other such verbs are conjugated afterwards, as compounds: namely, anfangen and verstehen.

Classified List of Strong Verbs.

Weak verbs are those whose past has t where English regulars have d; but those, which change the vowel, belong to ancient form, called also Strong

Class I. Radical e or i, past a.

An e or i in root will give an a in past indicative.

In participle e must go; before two consonants an o.

Œ doubled merely sharpens sound; before it, e — not o — is found.

Div. 1. e or i — a — e.

Sehen, sah, gesehen, sieht;	see
geschehen, geschah, geschehen, geschieht;	happen
essen, aß, gegessen, ißt;	eat
fressen, fraß, gefressen, frißt;	eat as a beast

messen	measure, ma, gemessen;	
geben	give; forget vergeffen;	
lesen, liesest, las, gelesen;		read
genet gets well, gena, genesen;		inf. genesen
treten trat, getreten, tritt;		tread
en, sa, geseen, sit;		
bitten, bat, gebeten beg, petition;		
Liegen, lag, gelegen, lie (position) ¹ .		

1. bitten to beg, petition; betteln to beg, to ask alms. Liegen to lie, said of one's position; lügen to lie, to tell falsehoods.

Div. 2. e or i — a — o.

Sprechen, sprach, gesprochen, sprich;	speak
brechen, brach, gebrochen, brich;	break
nehmen take, nimm, nahm, genommen;	
hide bergen; kommen, kam, gekommen;	
stechen, stach, gestochen, stung or pierced;	
gebären bear, gebar, geboren, gebierst;	
erschreckte frightened, feared erschraf;	
steckte stuck, but neuter staf;	
treffen, traf, getroffen hit;	
bersten, barst, to burst or split.	
Werfen, warf, geworfen, wirf, to cast;	
makes wärfe, würfe, in subjunctive past;	
so helfen, half, geholfen, hilf, assist;	
and werben, warb, makes wörbe, sue, enlist;	
sterben, starb, gestorben, stürbe;	die
verderben makes verdarb, verdürbe;	destroy
stehlen steal makes stahl, and stöhle, er stiehlt, er hat gestohlen;	
befehlen bid, befal, beföhle, befiehlt, er hat befohlen;	
empfehlen recommend, empföhle, empfiehlt, empfahl empfohlen;	
rinnen, rann, geronnen, rönne;	run, leak
spinnen, spann, gesponnen, spönne;	spin
finnen, fann, gesonnen, fönne;	meditate

beginnen makes begann, begin,
 begänne and begönne;
 so, schwimmen swim, gewinnen win,
 gewänne and gewönne;
 schelten, schalt, makes schälte, schölte,
 er schilt, er hat gescholten;
 gelten, galt makes gälte, gölte,
 er gilt, er hat gegolten.

Div. 3. i — a — u.

In participle past, the sound
 of un with d, g, f, is found:
 as, finden, fand, gefunden, find;
 binden, band, gebunden, bind;
 winden, wand, gewunden, wind;
 schwinden vanish, waste away;
 schund, schindete, from schinden flay;
 singen, sang, gesungen, sing;
 springen, sprang, gesprungen, spring;
 to sound or tingle klingen, klang;
 to press one's way is dringen, drang;
 dingen, dung and dang, gedungen; hire
 schlingen, twine, makes schlang, geschlungen;
 schwingen swing; to wrestle ringen;
 zwingen force; succeed gelingen;
 trinken, trank, getrunken, drink;
 stinken, stank; and sinken sink.
 but hinken, limp, makes hinkte, and gehinkt;
 and winken, beckon, winkte and gewinnt.

Class II. Radical ei.

In verbal roots, e i combined
 gives ie in past of Second kind;
 observe, a shortened i will come
 before two consonants in some.

Div. 1. ei — ie — ie.

Schreiben, write, makes schrieb, geschrieben;
bleiben, stay, makes blieb, geblieben;
steigen, stieg to mount, ascend;
zeihen charge with, leihen lend;
treiben, trieb, getrieben, drive;
reiben rub; gedeihen thrive;
scheinen, schien, geschienen seem;
keep silence schweigen; schreien scream;
to praise is preisen, pries, gepriesen;
demonstrate, weisen, wies, gewiesen;
scheiden, schied to part or quit;
meiden shun; and speien spit.

Div. 2. ei — i — i.

In past, we double f and t,
and some have double t for d:
as, reiten, ritt, geritten ride;
gleiten, glitt, geglitten glide;
so streiten strive; and schreiten stride;
schneiden, cut, makes schnitt, geschnitten;
leiden suffer, litt, gelitten;
pfeifen whistle, pfiß, gepfißen;
greifen, grasp, has griff, gegriffen;
feifen, scold, has feifte, fiß;
I dragged ich schleifte, ground ich schliß;
pinch kneifen, kniß or kneipen weak;
schleichen, schlich, geschlichen sneak;
ich bleichte bleached, grew pale erblich;
erweichte softened, yielded wich;
resemble, gleichen, glich, geglichen;
to stroke is streichen, strich, gestrichen;
fling schmeißen; beißen, biß, gebissen; bite
besleißen makes besliß, besliffen; (sich) apply to
so, freischen screech, and reißen tear;
but schleißten, spleißen, split, are rare.

Class III. Radical ie; au, ä, ö, ü; e.

From ie in root comes o in past:
with these some roots in au are classed;
and some have e; besides, a few
have modified a, o and u.

Div. 1. ie — o — o.

fliegen, fly, makes flog, geflogen;
ziehen, draw, makes zog, gezogen;
fliehen flee, imperfect floh;
ſchießen shoot with gun or bow;
ſprießen, ſproß, to shoot or sprout;
gießen, goß, pour liquors out;
genießen makes genoß, enjoy;
verdrießen makes verdroß, annoy
verlieren lose, verlor, verloren;
shut ſchließen: frieren, fror, gefroren;
bend actively is biegen, bog;
weigh neuterly is wiegen, wog;
eß ſtiebt it's dusty, past eß ſtoß;
triefen, troß; and ſchieben, ſchob; drip; push
bieten, bot; and friechen, kroch; offer; creep
ſieden, ſott; and riechen, roch; boil; smell of

Div. 2. au, ä, ö, ü — o — o.

Wägen, wog is active, weigh;
betrügen makes betrog, betray;
ſchwören, swear, makes ſchwur and ſchwor;
the old erſüren choose, erfor;
ſchwären feſter; ſchwor, geſchworen;
ferment is gähren, gohr, gegohren;
erſchallt, erſcholl; and lügen, log; sound; tell lies
ſaugen suck, er ſaugt, er ſog;
but ſchrauben screw, and ſchnauben snort,
are strong, or follow regular sort;
ſaufen, ſäuft, makes ſoß, to drink; as a beast
erlöſchen, -liſcht — becomes extinct.

Div. 3. e — o — o.

Scheren, ſchor, geſchoren; flechten, flocht;	shear; plait thresh; fight
dreſchen, droſch or draſch; and fechten, focht;	
er hebt, er hob, gehoben, heave;	
er webt, er wob or webte, weave;	
ſchmelzen, ſchmolz; and ſchwellen, ſchwoll;	melt; swell milk; spring
molk, er melkte; quellen, quoll;	
flimmen, climb, makes flomm and flimmte;	
glimmen glimmer, glomm and glimmte;	
bewegte moved, induced bewog;	
nursed pflegte, practised pflegte, pflog.	

Class IV. Radical vowel a.

From a comes ie; but, in a few,
the imperfect tense is formed in u;
the participles past obtain
the vowel of the root again.

Div. 1. a — ie — a (o — ie — o &c.)

Braten, brät, makes briet, gebraten;	roast
rathen, räth, makes rieth, gerathen;	advise
fangen fing ¹ ; and halten keep;	¹ take
hang, hing ¹ ; and ſchlafen sleep;	¹ hang
er geht, er ging, gegangen, go;	gehen
blasen, blies, geblasen, blow;	
fallen, fiel, gefallen, fall;	
heißen, hieß, geheißen, call;	
rufen, ruft, he called out rief;	
laufen, läuft, he ran er lief;	
stoßen, stößt, he pushed er stieß;	
er haut, er hieb; and laßen, ließ.	hew; let

Div. 2. a — u — a.

Tragen wear or carry, trug;
laden, lud; and ſchlagen, ſchlug;
waſchen, wuſch; and graben dig;
wachſen, wuchs increase, grow big;

backen, buß and backte, bake;
ſchaffen, ſchuf, geſchaffen, make,
but ſchaffte regular, procure;
ſtehen, ſtand; and fahren, fuhr. stand; drive.

The imperfect's regular in falten,
in malen, ſchroten, ſalzen, ſpalten;
in participle past, we find,
the form may be of either kind.

The Mixed Conjugation.

In some, weak forms in past are found,
which also change the vowel sound:
so wiſſen, past ich mußte, goes,
ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß he knows;
and, kennen, kannte; nennen, nannte;
brennen, brannte; rennen rannte,
ſenden, ſendete or ſandte;
wenden, wendete or wandte;
their present keeps, like brennt, the e;
subjunctive past like brennete.
But bringen, brächte and gebracht,
and denken, dächte and gedacht,
thun, that, gethan, ich thue, should
have ä in past subjunctive mood¹.

1. Their past subjunctives are brächte, dächte, thäte.

Verbs formed from Nouns.

When verbs come from nouns, they have regular form:
as in heirathen marry; berennen to storm;
and willfahren humour, comply with request;
bewillkommen, welcome as men do a guest;
so, herbergen, rathſchlagen — shelter, advise;
begleiten; veranlaſſen meaning give rise;
verleiden, beauftragen — mar, and commission;
umringen encompass; bedingen condition.

Reflective Verbs.

Reflective Verbs are followed by one of the reflective pronouns *mich, dich, sich, uns, euch, sich*, which stand in the place of an object, but serve to give some verbs an intransitive sense: as, *sich freuen* to rejoice, to be glad; *sich auszeichnen* to distinguish one's self, to excel.

Nearly all such verbs take the pronoun in the accusative case. The following, however, take it in the dative: *sich anmaßen, ich maße mir an* I presume; *sich einbilden, ich bilde mir ein* I imagine; *ich getraue mir* I am confident; *ich schmeichle mir* I flatter myself; and the impersonal verbs *es graut mir, es ekelt mir, es schwindelt mir, es behagt mir hier* I am comfortable here; *es gefällt mir hier* I am pleased here.

Conjugation

Sich freuen to enjoy one's self, to rejoice.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	<i>ich freue mich</i>	<i>ich freue mich,</i>
	<i>du freust dich</i>	<i>du freuest dich</i>
	<i>er freut sich</i>	<i>er freue sich</i>
	<i>wir freuen uns</i>	<i>wir freuen uns</i>
	<i>ihr freuet (freut) euch</i>	<i>ihr freuet euch</i>
	<i>sie freuen sich</i>	<i>sie freuen sich</i>
Impf.	<i>ich freute mich</i>	<i>ich freute mich</i>
Perf.	<i>ich habe mich gefreut</i>	<i>ich habe mich gefreut</i>
Plup.	<i>ich hatte mich gefreut</i>	<i>ich hätte mich gefreut</i>
Fut.	<i>ich werde mich freuen</i>	<i>ich werde mich freuen</i>
Fut. Pf.	<i>ich werde mich gefreut</i>	<i>ich werde mich gefreut</i>
	[haben]	[haben.]

1. Cond. *ich würde mich freuen*

2. Cond. *ich würde mich gefreut haben.*

Imperative.

Infinitive.

<i>freue dich</i>	<i>sich freuen</i>
<i>freue er sich</i>	<i>sich gefreut haben</i>
<i>freuen wir uns</i>	Participles.
<i>freuet euch</i>	<i>sich freuend</i>
<i>freuen sie sich</i>	<i>sich gefreut.</i>

List of Verbs Reflective in German but not in English¹.

sich ändern, verändern	change	sich enthalten	abstain
sich ärgern	be vexed	sich entscheiden über	} resolve upon
sich baden	bathe	sich entschließen zu	
sich bäumen	rear	sich erbarmen G.	pity
sich bedanken	thank	sich ergeben D.	surrender
sich bedienen (Gen)	make use of	sich ereignen	occur
sich beeilen	make haste	sich ergötzen an D.	delight
sich befinden	be well, ill &c.	sich erheben	to rise
sich begeben nach	repair to	sich erholen	recover
sich beklagen über	complain of	sich erinnern	recollect
sich bekümmern um	care for	sich erkälten	to catch cold
sich belaufen auf	amount to	sich erkundigen nach	to enquire after
sich bemächtigen	} take possession of	sich freuen über or auf	rejoice
sich bemeistern		sich gut oder schlecht aufführen	behave well or ill
sich berathen mit	consult with	sich fühlen (glücklich)	feel
sich berufen auf ihn	appeal to	sich fürchten vor	be afraid of,
sich beschweren über	complain of	or den Tod fürchten	
sich besprechen mit	converse	sich gedulden	have patience
sich bestreben	endeavour	sich grämen über	grieve over
sich (gut) betragen	behave	sich (rechter Hand) halten	keep to the right
sich besinnen	reflect	sich aufhalten	stop, stay
sich bewegen	move	sich (fest) halten an	cling to
sich bewerben um	apply for	sich hüten vor	beware of
sich beziehen auf	refer to	sich herablassen	condescend
sich biegen	bend	sich (zu viel) herausnehmen	to presume (assume) too much
sich (etwas) einbilden	imagine	sich irren, verirren	to err
sich brechen	break as waves, be reflected as rays	sich kümmern um	care about
sich drehen um	turn round		
sich empören	revolt		
sich entfernen	withdraw		

1. The list is taken from Frädersdorf's Becker p. 213. with alterations.

sich lagern encamp	sich unterwerfen submit
sich legen lie down, abate, come to anchor	sich verbreiten spread, as a report
sich fortmachen scamper off	sich verhehelichen } marry
sich mehren, vermehren, increase	sich verheirathen }
sich in etwas einmischen meddle with	sich vereinigen mit join
sich nähern D. approach	sich vergehen do wrong
sich nähren, ernähren von, durch get one's living by	sich so verhalten be so
sich neigen vor bow to	sich verlassen auf rely upon
sich neigen zu be inclined to	sich verlieben in fall in love with [to
sich öffnen open	sich verloben mit be betrothed
sich regen stir	sich verschwören conspire
sich rühmen boast	sich verwenden für intercede
sich scheuen vor be afraid of scheuen to fear (God), shy	sich verspäten be too late
sich schlängeln meander	sich verstehen auf be skilled in
sich schmiegen an fawn on	sich verstehen zu agree to
sich senken sink (of a building)	sich wälzen wallow, welter
sich sehnen nach to long for	sich waschen wash
sich setzen sit down	sich weigern refuse
sich spiegeln be reflected	sich wenden turn
sich streiten um contend for	sich widersetzen oppose
streiten fight, contend	sich wundern über wonder
sich stürzen in plunge into	sich zanken mit quarrel with
sich herumtreiben ramble about	sich zerstreuen disperse
sich unterhalten converse	sich zurückziehen retreat
	sich ziehen nach draw near.

Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal verbs express some natural event, or indicate some time, distance &c., without reference to any particular person or thing. They have no subject except the pronoun es it.

Conjugation: regnen to rain.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Pres. es regnet it rains

es regne

Imp. es regnete

es regnete

Perf.	eš hat geregnet	eš habe geregnet
Plup.	eš hatte geregnet	eš hätte geregnet
1. Fut.	eš wird regnen	eš werde regnen
2. Fut.	eš wird geregnet haben	eš werde geregnet haben
	1. Cond.	eš würde regnen
	2. Cond.	eš würde geregnet haben
	Imperative.	eš regne may it rain
	Inf. Pres.	regnen Perf. geregnet haben
	Participles	Pr. regnend Perf. geregnet.

In the same way are declined: eš blicht there is lightning, eš dämmert it grows dusky, eš dunfelt it grows dark, eš donnert it thunders, eš friert it freezes, eš gewittert there is a thunderstorm, eš hagelt it hails, eš nebelt it is foggy, eš reift it is rimy, hazy weather, eš schneit it snows, eš stäubt it is dusty, eš stürmt there is a storm, eš thauet there is a thaw, eš wetterleuchtet there is lightning without thunder, eš klopfst somebody knocks at the door, eš läutet the bell rings, eš schlägt the clock strikes, eš tömmelt the drum is beating, eš wird Morgen, Abend morning or evening is coming on.

Those impersonal verbs, which express an affection of mind or body, may either take the reflexive pronoun after them, or they may be preceded by it: as, eš hungert mich or mich hungert or ich hungrig I am hungry, eš durstet mich or mich durstet or ich durstig I am thirsty, eš friert mich or mich friert I am chilly, eš verlangt mich or mich verlangt nach etwas I long for something, eš gelüstet mich or mich gelüstet nach etwas I lust after something, eš jammert mich or mich jammert (Gen.) I pity, eš schaudert mich or mich schaudert I shudder, eš ahnet mir or mir ahnet I forebode, eš reuet mich or mich reuet I repent of, eš grauet mir or mir grauet I am afraid of — eš ekelt mir or mir ekelt vor — I am disgusted at, — eš schwindelt mir or mir schwindelt — I am giddy, eš dünkt mir or mir dünkt, eš dünkt mir or mir dünkt it seems to me. Dünkt is preferable, when we speak of ideas; dünkt when we speak of visible objects.

The thing which should be the subject sometimes comes after the impersonal verb as an object: eš mangelt, fehlt,

gebricht an Geld money is wanting; es bedarf keines Beweises there is no need of proof: es brauchte viele oder vieler Mühe it required much trouble; es kommt hier nur auf Geld an money alone is regarded in this.

Some verbs are used both personally and impersonally. Belieben Sie jetzt eine Tasse Thee, would you like a cup of tea now; wie es Ihnen beliebt, as you please; es gilt, it concerns, es gilt dein Leben, your life is at stake; es heißt it is said, es scheint, daß es bald regnen wird, it appears that it will soon rain; es giebt sich von selbst, it follows of course; es fragt sich, it is a question; es gefällt mir hier, I am pleased here; es trägt sich zu, it occurs; es gehört sich, it is fitting, becoming.

The **passive** of intransitive verbs is sometimes used impersonally: es wird viel davon geredet, there is much talk on the subject; es wurde viel gesungen und gespielt, there was much singing and playing; es wird in Deutschland viel geraucht, there is much smoking in Germany: es wurde nach dem Arzt geschickt, the physician was sent for.

The verb sein is used, as in English, in many impersonal expressions: es ist kalt it is cold, kühl cool, früh early, spät late, Morgen, Abend, sechs Uhr; es ist heute Sonntag it is Sunday to-day. Es ist mir wohl, übel, heiß, I am well, ill, hot. Es ist mir gut oder schlecht zu Muth, I am in good or bad spirits.

Es giebt *there is, there are*, has the indefinite meaning of *there exists, or there exist*, like the French *il y a*. The substantive expressing the thing which exists is put in the accusative. Es gab einmal einen Riesen, there was once a giant. Es giebt noch Wölfe in Polen, there are still wolves in Poland. Was giebt's da? what is the matter there? Was giebt's Neues? what news?

Es ist and es sind *there is, there are*, assert more definitely a positive number or quantity. Es sind hundert tausend Einwohner in dieser Stadt, there are 100,000 inhabitants in this town. Es ist ein Freund von mir in London, there is a friend of mine in London.

Most impersonal verbs are conjugated with *haben*: *es hat gedonnert*, it has thundered. *Geschehen*, however, is an exception, being conjugated with *sein*: *es ist geschehen* it has happened.

Verbs are frequently used reflectively along with an adjective: *sich tödt arbeiten* to kill one's self by working — to work one's self dead; *sich heiser sprechen*, to make one's self hoarse by speaking; *sich krank lachen*, to make one's self ill by laughing; *sich satt essen*, to eat till one is satisfied. Even neuter verbs are used in this way, and are then conjugated with *haben* instead of *sein*: *sich lahm reiten*, to lame one's self by riding; *sich müde laufen*, to tire one's self by running.

Compound Verbs.

The compound verbs in German are formed **first**, by means of one of the inseparable prefixes *be*, *er*, *ent*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*; *hinter*, *miß*, *wider*; **secondly**, by means of one of the five prefixes *durch*, *über*, *unter*, *um*, *voll*, which are sometimes separable and sometimes not; or **thirdly**, by means of a preposition or other word, which is always separable.

The Inseparable Compounds.

The conjugation of the inseparable compounds is exactly the same as that of the simple verbs, except that the past participle wants the prefix *ge*. An example (*verstehen*) is conjugated at page 129 along with a separable compound.

The peculiar force of these particles is as follows:

*Be*¹.

Intransitive verbs, nouns and adjectives may be made transitive verbs by the particle *be*: from *flecken* a spot comes *beflecken* to stain; *beklagen* bewail is from *klagen* complain.

Be changes the object: *wir streuen den Sand*², *wir bestreuen das Zimmer*³, *bewerfen die Wand*⁴.

1. Those which do not govern the accusative but have a different construction are: *behagen*, *belieben* it pleases *dat.*, *begeggen* to meet *dat.*, *beharren auf dat.* to persevere in, *beruhen auf dat.* to be founded on, *bestehen auf dat.* to insist upon, *bestehen aus dat.* to consist of. 2. We strew sand. 3. We cover the room with sand. 4. we plaster the wall. So *wir malen Blumen* we paint flowers; but, *wir bemalen den Tisch mit Blumen* we cover the table with paintings of flowers.

Ge.

Ge carries the meaning to some fuller end:
as, *gehorden* obey, and *gereichen* to tend.

Er, Ver.

Acquisition, completion, progression is *er*:
loss, error, deterioration is *ver*:
erblühen to blossom, *verblühen* decay,
errathen to guess, and *verrathen* betray;
In verspielen, *verschlagen* and *such*, *ver* is *loss*
and with adjectives, *change*: as, *vergrößern* from *groß*.

Ent.

Separation, privation or origin — *ent*,
or the converse of what by the simple is meant:
entschuldigen means to exculpate from blame,
entfleiden undress and *entzünden* inflame,
entbieten, *entsprechen* have *ent* for against,
enthalten contain is from *Inhalt* contents;
we have *em* in *empfehlen* commend or take leave,
in *empfinden* to feel, and *empfangen* receive.

Zer, Wider, Miß.

In pieces is *zer* — to distraction or *dis*;
opposition is *wider*, the wrong way is *miß*:
zerrüttet distracted, to smash is *zerbrechen*,
and *mißrathen* fail, contradict *widersprechen*.
Miß mostly takes accent, excepting in these:
mißgönnen to grudge, and *mißfallen* displease,

mißlingen, mißglücken to fail, not succeed.

When the meaning is active then *ge* must precede¹.

1. as in *gemißachtet, gemißbilligt, gemißbraucht, gemißdeutet, gemißhandelt, gemißtraut*. But when the sense is neuter *ge* is either put between the two, or thrown away: as, *mißgeartet, mißlungen*.

Prefixes both Separable and Inseparable.

Durch, Um, Ueber, Unter, Voll.

When *durch, um, über, unter, voll* are separable, they take the principal accent; and in the past participle, *ge* is placed between the verb and the preposition. When they are inseparable, the verb has the principal accent, and then *ge* is omitted in the past participle: thus *übergeführt* means conveyed over, but *überführt* convinced. The distinction between the sense of these compounds, when they are separable, and when they are inseparable, forms one of the difficulties of the language. One rule is, that they are separable when quite literal, and inseparable when not quite literal; but this rule applies only generally to *über* and *unter*, but is not true of *durch* and *um*. Another rule is that these prepositions are separable when the verb is intransitive, and inseparable when transitive — but this rule also applies only to particular cases. The following rules, which are mostly founded on those of Wittich (Gr. § 131—135), will be found useful in distinguishing these two classes of verbs.

Durch.

Accent the *durch*, if actions pass quite through, or permeate a mass; inseparable *durch* will give more stress, and render transitive: *das Feld durchreiten* means to ride all o'er the field, or all about; *ich reite durch* from side to side — directly through the field and out: *es spaltet durch* is neuter *cleave*, *durchspalten* takes accusative.

Additional Examples.

Ein hartes Jahr durchleben spend,
man lebt es durch lives to its end;
er bohrte durch — quite through a board,
durchbohrte perforated, gored:
wir seh'n die Rechnung durch all through,
durchsehen penetrate, review;
ich blättre durch turn every leaf,
I skim durchblättre einen Brief;
ich setze durch I execute;
ich bring' es durch I spend, run through it;
es drückt das Pferd durch galls the horse;
man schlägt sich durch gets through by force.

Um, Ueber, Unter.

Um, über, unter with the accent go,
when verbs mean *put* around, above, below;
the verb, however, has the stress on it
expressing *cover, prop, surround*, with mit;
man überstreut den Boden strews the floor¹,
but streut die Blumen über strews them o'er;
umhängt das Zimmer hangs the room,
but hängt sich einen Mantel um;²
wir untergraben undermine a town;
wir graben Unkraut unter dig weeds down.

1. mit Sand &c. bestreuen is better. 2. one puts a cloak on.

Um.

N.B. *The numbers connect the examples with the rule.*

Accent the um to indicate
turn round (1), *to perish* (2), *change the state* (3),
fall down (4), like nieder, on the ground;
but not *encompass, turn, surround* (5):
ich fleide um I change the suit,
ich wandle um transform, transmute (3);
ich falle, reite, um — upset (4),
umsegle circumnavigate (5),

ich wende um turn inside out (1),
man geht um goes a roundabout (1),
umgeht den Berg one turns the hill (5),
man kommt um, bringt um — perish, kill (2).

Unter, Ueber.

With über, unter separable,
the sense of compound's literal.

Unter.

Ich schreibe unter write beneath — some lines;
man unterschreibt ein Testament, one signs.
The following verbs have unter separate:
ich ordne unter, I subordinate;
ich komme — bringe — unter find a berth;
der Mond geht unter, sinks below the earth.

Ueber.

Accent not über, but the verb in such
as mean *surpass* (1), *spend time* (2), or *do too*
but über has the tone in *overflow* (4), [*much* (3)];
project above (5), *pass over* (6), *overthrow* (7):
man übersezt translates a book;
ich übersehe overlook;
ich sehe über — standing higher (6);
die Milch kott über¹ — auf dem Feuer (4);
ich übertraf ihn I surpassed (1);
ich überritt I rode too fast (3);
but ritt ihn über rode him down (7);
ich überwintre² — in the town (2);
der Fels ragt über — overhead,
but überragt den Fluß³ is said (5).

1. The milk boiled over on the fire. 2. I spend the winter.
3. the rock projects over the river. When the verb is transitive, both forms of expression are used.

Wieder, Hinter, Voll.

With the accent on verb: wiederholen repeat,¹
 Hintertreiben to thwart, hintergehen to cheat,
 hinterbringen inform², hinterlassen bequeath or to leave
 hinterführen³ (man führt einen hinter das Licht) to deceive
 Voll *full* is accented; but not, if it mean
fulfilment of acts, in vollstrecken⁴, vollziehen,
 vollenden⁵, vollführen⁶, vollbringen complete;
 one carries out sentences, laws, man vollzieht.

1. Wiederholen is the only compound of wieder which has the accent on the last. 2. Hinterbringen inform secretly: man hinterbrachte es ihm. 3. Hinterführen deceive; but it is more common to say: hinter das Licht führen. 4. to execute directly, to effectuate. 5. finish. 6. accomplish.

Separable Compounds.

The **separation** of the verb and the separable prefix takes place in the **present** and **imperfect indicative** and in the **imperative**; but, in a dependent sentence, the whole verb is thrown to the end. The augment ge and the preposition zu go **between** the verb and the prefix.

Conjugation of a Separable and an Inseparable Verb.

Anfangen to begin. Verstehen to understand.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Present.

ich fange an	ich verstehe	ich fange an	ich verstehe
du fängst an	du verstehst	du fangest an	du verstehest
er fängt an	er versteht	er fange an	er verstehe
wir fangen an	wir verstehen	wir fangen an	wir verstehen
ihr fangt an	ihr versteht	ihr fanget an	ihr verstehet
sie fangen an	sie verstehen	sie fangen an	sie verstehen.
Imperf. ich fing an, ich verstand		ich finge an, ich verstände	
Perf. ich habe angefangen,		ich habe angefangen,	
" " verstanden		" " verstanden.	
Plup. ich hatte angefangen,		ich hätte angefangen,	
" " verstanden		" " verstanden	

1. Fut. ich werde anfangen, ich werde anfangen,
 " " verstehen " " verstehen
 2. Fut. ich werde angefangen haben, ich werde angefangen haben,
 " " verstanden haben " " verstanden haben
 1. Cond. ich würde anfangen, verstehen : or ich finge an,
 ich verstehe
 2. Cond. ich würde angefangen haben : or ich hätte angefangen
 ich würde verstanden haben : or ich hätte verstanden

Imperative.

Infinitive.

- S. 1. — Pr. anfangen, verstehen
 2. fange an, verstehe Perf. angefangen haben
 3. { fange er an, verstehe er verstanden haben
 { er soll anfangen, verstehen Fut. anfangen werden
 P. 1. { fangen wir an, verstehen wir verstehen werden.
 { laffet uns anfangen, verstehen

Participles.

2. { fanget (ihr) an, verstehtet Pr. anfangend, verstehend
 { fangen Sie an, verstehen Sie Perf. angefangen, verstanden.
 3. Sie sollen anfangen, verstehen.

Prepositions and adverbs are separable from the verbs with which they are compounded.

Prepositions and Adverbs used as Prefixes.

1. ab off, abreisen to set off, to depart
 2. an on, at, ansehen to look at or on, regard
 3. auf up, auflären to clear up, to explain
 4. auß out, ausrufen to cry out, to exclaim
 5. bei by, beistehen to stand by, to assist
 6. da there, daſitzen to sit there
 7. ein in, into eintreten to go into, enter
 8. emper up, aloft, emperziehen to draw up, to hoist aloft
 9. entgegen opposite, entgegenſetzen to set against, to oppose
 10. fort away, on fertheilen to hasten away, to hasten on
 11. heim home, heimſchiffen to sail homewards
 12. her from a place, or to the speaker
 13. hin to a place, or from the speaker

14. mit	with,	mitbringen to bring with
15. nach	after,	nachgeben to go after, to follow
16. nieder	down,	niederlassen to let down, sich condescend
17. ob (ober)	over,	obliegen to be incumbent on
18. vor	before,	vorstellen to represent
19. weg	away,	weglaufen to run away
20. wieder	again,	wiederkehren to turn back
21. zu	to,	zuhören to listen to
21. zurück	back,	zurückwerfen to throw back
22. zusammen	together,	zusammenbringen bring together, collect.

The following compounds of *hin* and *her* with prepositions are used as verbal prefixes, *her* meaning from a place (towards the speaker), and *hin* to a place (away from the speaker).

<i>herab</i> , <i>hinab</i> , down	<i>herüber</i> , <i>hinüber</i> , over
<i>heran</i> , <i>hinan</i> , nearer	<i>herum</i> , <i>hinum</i> , round about
<i>herauf</i> , <i>hinauf</i> , up	<i>herunter</i> , <i>hinunter</i> , down
<i>heraus</i> , <i>hinaus</i> , out	<i>hervor</i> forth
<i>herbei</i> this way, like <i>heran</i>	<i>hinweg</i> away
<i>herein</i> , <i>hinein</i> , into	<i>herzu</i> , <i>hinzu</i> , towards.

Other compounds are formed by combining *hier*, *da*, *wo* with prepositions (see below *prepositions combined*).

Remarks on Adverbs and Particles used as Separable Prefixes, and their English Equivalents.

Hin and *her*.

Her denotes motion from a place and towards the speaker
hin motion to a place and from the speaker. They may be used with a verb singly, without anything else in combination: as, *komm her*, come here; *gehe hin*, go away. *Her* is sometimes found connected with *von*; and *hin* with *gegen*, *nach* and *zu*. *Der Wind kommt von der See her*, the wind comes off the sea. *Der Wind wehet nach der See hin*, the wind blows towards the sea. The same is also the case, when we speak of a point of time. *Von Anbeginn der Welt her*, bis

an's Ende hin, from the beginning of the world to its end. Every motion has a point of departure and a destination towards which it takes place; *her* expresses that the body leaves the place, where it formerly was; *hin* that it moves towards the place, where it is to be at the end of its motion. When one of these directions is specified, although the speaker is not the point towards or from which the motion takes place, it is by no means indifferent which of the two forms we use. *Jesus stieg vom Berge herab*, Jesus went down from the mountain. *Jesus stieg in das Thal hinab*, Jesus went down into the valley. *Ich gehe aus dem Hause heraus*, I go out of the house. *Ich gehe in das Feld hinaus*, I go into the field. When no point of direction is given, we can say either *her* or *hin*, but some point may be understood by the speaker. *Ich sah heraus*, that is, out of a room; *ich sah hinaus*, that is, into the street. See Eberhard's Synonymen p. 477.

The Compounds with *hin* and *her* are therefore used when a particular local direction has to be indicated; *her* indicating, in reference to the speaker, towards him, and *hin* from him. *Ist Ihr Vater zu Hause? nein, er ist ausgegangen.* Is your father at home? no, he is out. *Ist Ihr Vater in seinem Zimmer? nein, er ist soeben hinausgegangen.* Is your father in his room? no, he has just gone out *of it*. Compound verbs of motion, without *hin* and *her*, have thus merely a general or sometimes a figurative meaning:

ankommen to arrive	herankommen to draw nearer
auflegen to impose (taxes &c.)	herauflegen, hinauflegen to lay upon a place
ausrufen to exclaim	herausrufen to call out of a room &c.
einstoßen to push in — break a window &c.	hineinstoßen to push into a place
unterlassen to omit	hinunterlassen to let down
vorziehen to prefer	hervorziehen to draw forth.

Hin also means *away* in the sense of withering or dying away: as, *hinwelken* to fade away, *hinschwinden* to vanish.

Hinauf, hinab, herauf, herab are often preceded by the accusative case. Das Wasser läuft nicht den Berg hinauf, water does not run up the hill (prov.). In aller Eile flohen sie den Berg hinab, they fled in the greatest haste down the hill. Wir gehen den Berg hinan, we ascend the mountain.

When hin and her follow the preposition or adverb, they are accented, and have the force of a demonstrative. Of this sort are the following:

bisher	hitherto,	ohnehin	besides, all the same,
einher	along,	vorher	before, previously,
mithin	consequently, of course,	umher	about,
nachher	after that time,	zeither	hitherto.

Umhin is used in phrases implying inability to avoid: I cannot help laughing, ich kann nicht umhin zu lachen.

Hier or hie, da, dort, wo, compounded with her and hin.

Hier or hie here, da there, dort over there, yonder, are distinguished as the first, second and third places in the speaker's mind; wo means *where* both relatively and interrogatively. When combined with her, these particles signify from a place towards the speaker, and when combined with hin, to a place from the speaker. Kommen Sie hierher come here. Gehen Sie hierhin go this way. Bringen Sie es daher bring it thence. Tragen Sie es dahin carry it there. Woher kommen Sie? or wo kommen Sie her? where do you come from? Wohin gehen Sie? or wo gehen Sie hin? where are you going to? Es donnert dort it is thundering there, es donnert dorthier the thunder comes from that direction, er lief dorthin he ran off in that direction.

Against, in exchange. Dagegen.

Dagegen means *against*, in opposition to, or *in exchange*. Er ist nicht dagegen, he is not against it. Ich habe nichts dagegen, I have no objections. Dagegen läßt sich nichts einwenden, there can be no objections to that. Was geben Sie mir dagegen? what do you give me in exchange? By way of exchange, tauschweise.

Along. Einher, Daher.

Along is einher in such compounds as, einhergleiten to glide along, einherprunfen to prance along, einherstolziren to strut along, einherziehen to move on. Daher has also this meaning, together with the sense of approaching: daherfliegen to fly along, daherrauschen to rush along. Entlang, along, is more frequently used adverbially with an acc. preceding. Wir ritten das Ufer entlang, we rode along the bank.

Away, off. Fort, Weg, Hin, Dahin, Davon, Ver.

Fort and weg both mean *away*; but fort means *on to some distance away*, whereas weg means *completely away*. Hinweg is more defined in meaning and is poetical. Fort also means continuance; see *on*. To fade away or decay in strength is hinschwinden. To wither away (like leaves, flowers) verwelken (hinwelken). To die away (of sounds) verhallen, verklingen. To pass away (of time) vergehen.

Dahin also gives to verbs the sense of passing or wasting away. Die glücklichen Tage sind dahin, the happy days are gone.

Ach! die Freuden dieses Lebens
eilen gar zu schnell dahin.

Christus hat sich für uns dahingegeben, Christ has offered himself as a sacrifice for us. Etwas dahingestellt sein lassen to leave something undecided. Davon *off* gives the sense of getting off or out of the way, off with: davonkommen to get off — with impunity &c.; davongehen to get out of the way — of one's creditors &c.; den Sieg davontragen to carry off the victory.

Bei. Da. Dabei, herbei. Dazwischen, darein, hinein.

Bei denotes generally more than mere presence. It denotes assistance in beistehen to assist, beitragen to contribute &c.; in other verbs it means to ascribe (beimeffen), attribute (beilegen) &c. Da means in a certain place: ich wäre gern dageblieben, I should have liked to stay there. Dabei to be there, to be one of a company or party. Wollen Sie mit

dabei sein, will you be one of the party. Er kam sehr bald herbei or dazu, he made his appearance very soon. Er hat der Zusammenkunft beigewohnt, he was present at the meeting. Darein denotes (1) therein, (2) interruption. Rede mir nicht darein or dazwischen, do not interrupt me, (einen unterbrechen, einem ins Wort or in die Rede fallen). Dazwischen implies interference. Ereignisse können dazwischen kommen events might intervene. Einschreiten to step in or interpose one's authority.

Before. In anticipation of. By or past. Forth. Vor, Dar &c.

Vor corresponds generally to *before* in English, voran refers specially to place, and vorher to time, while voraus expresses both, but to greater distance, meaning *farther before, beforehand, in anticipation*. Vorreiten, more commonly voranreiten, to ride in front; vorreiten also, to show how to ride. Vorher sagen to predict, vorherbedenken to premeditate; er ist vorausgegangen he has gone on before; er genießt es voraus or im voraus he enjoys it in anticipation.

Vor has often the idea of something passing before one's mind or presenting itself. Sich vorsehen to propose to one's self, vorgehen to happen, vorfallen to occur (with the idea of occurring unexpectedly), vorgeben to pretend, vorwerfen to upbraid or cast in one's teeth. Dar in some compounds has this sense of presenting or representing, as if it were contracted for davor. Darbieten means to offer or present money, sacrifice &c. A good opportunity presents itself, es bietet sich eine gute Gelegenheit dar. Darbringen to bring (as a sacrifice) for the acceptance of another. Darlegen to lay open, expound or explain; vorlegen means to submit to one's view (zur Einsicht), to put (meat) before, to submit a question for judgment (eine Frage zur Beurtheilung). Darstellen means exhibit, literally, to depict to the senses; whereas vorstellen is more figurative, meaning to represent or describe, also to represent or personate. Der Maler hat sie schöner dargestellt als sie ist the painter has represented her as more beautiful than she is. Er stellt den Liebhaber vor, he acts the lover.

Vor in compounds often denotes that a thing is done by way of example or lesson: thus, vorfingen to take the lead in singing, to precent; der Vorfänger the precentor, vorfchreiben to set a copy. Vorfingen also means *to sing to any one*: fingen Sie mir etwas vor.

By or past after verbs of motion is vorbei, vorüber. Ich bin an dem Hause vorbeigegangen I went past the house. Die Predigt ist vorbei the sermon is over. Es ist Eins vorbei it is past one. Das Gewitter zieht vorüber the storm is blowing over.

Hervor means *forth*, when something is brought out of some hidden place into view, or appears suddenly. It is the Latin *pro* in such verbs as *produco*: thus, hervorbringen means to bring forward into view, and also to produce or give existence to what did not exist before. So, hervorkommen to come forth, hervorrennen &c.; fich durch feinen Muth hervorhun to distinguish one's self. Zuvor, the Latin *præ*, means *in anticipation of*, whether it be to prevent or to supply in advance. Ich hatte ihn lange zuvor gewarnt, I had cautioned him long before. Er kommt mir immer zuvor he always anticipates my wishes. Zuvor has the sense of excelling in zuvorthun, zuvorlaufen. Er thut es allen Andern zuvor he excels all others.

Back, Behind.

Hinter is behind; hinterher *to the rear* when the motion is towards the speaker; hinten for hinten an is towards the rear of a place, when the motion is from the speaker. Zurück (Latin *retro*), with a verb of motion, means backwards or back again: as, zurücktreiben to push back, zurückkommen to come again, zurückkehren to turn back. When zurück is not joined to a verb of motion, it means behind, but not out of reach or possibility of recovery. When the thing is absolutely left, we use hinten or hinten. A rich man hinterläßt leaves behind his property. A traveller, who cannot pay his reckoning, may sometimes leave behind zurücklassen his watch. He who does not think he receives the full amount of consideration, believes himself *slighted* zurückgefetzt,

he, who is treated apparently without any consideration, is *hintangesezt disregarded* (Eberhard's Synonyms).

Down.

Herunter means *down below the level* ~~where the speaker is~~ ~~standing~~, nieder means *down to the ground or level* ~~where~~ ~~is~~. Er fiel von der Brücke herunter, he fell from the bridge, below its level. Kommen Sie herunter, come down. Setzen Sie es nieder (auf den Tisch), set it down. Der Baum fiel nieder or um, the tree fell down on the ground. Hinunter means *down there*, in the direction away from the speaker. Herab and hinab *down* are synonyms of herunter and hinunter, but somewhat finer words. Wasserströme rollten das Gebirge herab, streams of water rushed down from the mountain. Er stieg herab, he descended.

Sie trügen seine Bahr' an's Grab,
Und manche Zähre rann herab,
Indem sein Sarg versank.

Bürger.

In, Into, Nearer, Up, Upon. Addition.

In meaning *into* is ein. A person, who knocks on the outside, asks: darf ich hineinkommen? may I come in? The person within answers: ja, kommen Sie herein, yes, come in. Heran means motion nearer a place, and in the direction of the speaker; herbei denotes the same, only a nearer and more hasty approach. Wollen Sie sich nicht hereinbemühen? will you not take the trouble to come in? Wollen Sie sich nicht heranbemühen? will you not take the trouble to come nearer? Motion away from the speaker to a place is hinan or hinzu, but hinan has the accessory idea of motion upwards. Er stieg den Berg hinan, he ascended or went up the hill; er stieg den Berg hinauf, he climbed to the top of the mountain. Hinzu is less poetical than hinan and denotes a simple approach. Er drängt sich überall hinzu, he thrusts himself in every where. Hinzu has often the meaning of *in addition to*. Er sagt die Wahrheit rein heraus, ohne etwas

hinzu zu dichten, he speaks the plain truth without adding anything of his own. Dazu has also this meaning. Hinzuthun or dazuthun, hinzufügen or dazufügen, hinzusetzen or dazusetzen, hinzulegen or dazulegen mean to add. Hinzukommen and hinzubringen may express either a simple approach or addition: hinzukommt noch daß, or dazukommt noch daß, in addition.

On, Upon, Off. Continuance, Cessation.

On when it means *upon* is in general auf: man legt Steuern auf, we impose or put on taxes. Combined with her and hin, auf means upon, on the top of a *place*. Wir fuhren den Fluß hinauf oder aufwärts we sailed up the river. *On*, *further on*, denoting continuance, is fort: as, fortschreiben to continue writing, to write on; fortsingen to continue singing, to sing on. To take off the hat, a limb &c. is abnehmen; to take off clothes ausziehen. The opposite of fort is aus and, in some verbs, auf. Das Gewitter tobt fort, the storm continues to rage: das Gewitter hat ausgetobt, the storm is over. Der Sturm hat aufgehört, the storm has ceased or subsided. Man hat das Gesetz abgeschafft oder aufgehoben, they have abrogated the law.

Over.

Herüber over, in the direction of the speaker: as, herüberkommen to come over, to cross. Over, away from the speaker, is hinüber: as, hinübergehen to go over. Schiller says: wenn dich das schwanke Brett hinüberträgt. Kommen Sie zu mir herüber; später werden wir zu Ihnen, über den Rhein &c. hinübergehen.

Out.

Heraus and hinaus refer to place. We can say: einen Stein herauspflügen to get a stone out by ploughing; sich herausbemühen to take the trouble to come out. Aus is *out* generally, or *ex* in composition: as, ausstrecken to extend, ausdrücken to express, auslassen to leave out &c. It also denotes cessation: as, ausregnen to cease raining.

Verbs doubly Compounded.

When one of the inseparable particles *be, ver, er, zer, ent,* comes before another prefix, the verb is not really a double compound, but formed from a compound noun: thus, *beobachten, beauftragen, verantworten, verurtheilen, verabshieden, veranlassen* are not derived from the verbs *auftragen, antworten &c.*, but from the substantives *Obacht, Auftrag, Antwort, Urtheil &c.* They remain therefore inseparable (Becker p. 144).

Generally speaking, prepositions are not prefixed to verbs beginning with particles. There are some such verbs, as, for instance, *anbefehlen* to enjoin, *anerkennen* to acknowledge, *anvertrauen* to entrust, *vorbehalten* to reserve; but they are not convenient verbs to use; and some of them are never used, when the construction requires their separation: as, *anbelangen* and *anbetreffen* to concern, *aufersiehen* to rise from the dead, *auferbauen* to build up or edify, *aufserlegen* to enjoin, *auserlesen* to select, *auserwählen* to choose. Thus, we may say: *was mich anbetrifft* as far as regards myself, but *es betrifft mich* it concerns me. *Er hat mir ein wichtiges Werk aufserlegt*, but *er legte mir ein wichtiges Werk auf*.

Verbs compounded with adjectives and nouns.

The following are in separable:

fehlschlagen miscarry : *die Sache ist mir fehlschlagen*
freisprechen acquit : *sie haben ihn freigesprochen*
gleich equal, as : *er kommt ihm nicht gleich*
hochschätzen to prize highly, *hochachten* to esteem highly
loß loose, off : *man sprach or kaufte ihn loß, acquit, ransom*
stattfinden, statthaben to take place : *es findet selten statt.*

The following are in separable:

argwöhnen to suspect : *ich argwöhne keinen Betrug*
brandmarken to stigmatise : *der Missethäter wurde gebrandmarkt*
frohlocken to exult : *über einen Gegner, dem Herrn frohlocken*
frühstücken to breakfast : *haben Sie gefrühstückt?*

handhaben to handle e. g. einen Degen; die Geseze (maintain)
hofmeistern act as tutor, also to censure (in contempt). Er

hofmeistert mein Betragen

langweilen to tire : die Geschichte hat mich gelangweilt

liebkoßen to caress : die Mutter liebkoßet das Kind

liebäugeln to ogle : einen oder mit einem liebäugeln

lustwandeln to take a walk; nachtwandeln to walk in one's
sleep

radebrechen to murder a language (e. g. das Englische)

rathschlagen to deliberate : man rathschlagt was zu thun sei

rechtfertigen to justify : er hat sich gerechtfertigt

schriftstellern to write for publication

schulmeistern to teach a school, to act the schoolmaster

weissagen to prophesy, to augur : die Alten weissagten aus
dem Fluge der Vögel

willfahren to comply with : er hat ihm in diesem Punkte ge-
willfahrt.

In these verbs the augment ge is put before the whole
compound: as, ich habe gelustwandelt &c.

Adverbs, Umstandswörter.

Adverbs are words used to modify the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. They express the manner or degree in which, the time when, or the place where a thing takes place or a quality exists: as, the bird flies *swiftly*, the house is *sufficiently* large, he sees *very distinctly*.

Nearly all adjectives may be used as adverbs: thus, er spricht *schlecht*, he speaks badly. Haben Sie gut geschlafen? did you sleep well? When adjectives are used as adverbs they are not altered, except the following, which add *lich* — a suffix equivalent to *ly* in English.

erstlich first

freilich certainly, indeed

ewiglich everlastingly

gänzlich totally

gewißlich certainly	neulich lately, the other day
gütlich in a kindly manner	reichlich richly
höchlich highly	ſchwerlich hardly
klügllich cleverly	ſicherlich surely
kürzlich shortly	treulich faithfully
lediglich merely	wahrlich really, verily.

We must not mistake these adverbs for adjectives like those formed from adjectives or nouns by adding *lich* (= *ish* or *ly*): thus, *alt* old, *ältlich* elderly, *braun* brown, *bräunlich* brownish, *Freund* friend, *freundlich* friendly. We must say: *ein wahrhaft guter Mann* a truly good man — not *wahrlich*.

The Genitive was originally the adverbial form, and is still retained in many words, as in the following:

Time: *abends*, *morgens*, *tags*, *nachts*, *vormittags*, *ſommers*, *winters* — during the evening, morning, day, night, forenoon, summer, winter; *mittwochs* on Wednesdays, *anfangs* in the beginning, *bereits* already, *ſtugs* and *ſtracks* at once, *augenblicks* this instant, *ſtets* constantly, *zeitlebens* for one's life.

Place: *rechts* to the right, *links* to the left, *rounds* round about, *dieſſeits* on this side, *jenſeits* on that side, *nirgend* or *nirgendes* nowhere. Also the compounds of *wärts* (from *werden*) *rückwärts* backwards, *vorwärts* forwards, *ſeitwärts* sideways, *abwärts* off the way.

Manner: *anders* otherwise, *beſonders* particularly, *angeſichts* in the sight of, *falls* in case, *theils* partly, *übrigens* besides.

Also, the participles: *eilends* in haste, *zuſehends* visibly, *unverſehens* unawares, *durchgehends* generally, universally, *nachgehends* afterwards, next to this, *vergebens* in vain.

When the adverbial idea is expressed by adjectives combined with *weiſe*, *weg*, *mal*, *theil*, *ding*, the genitive is used: thus, *natürlicherweiſe* of course, *glücklicherweiſe* fortunately, *keinesweges* no way, *folgendergeſtalt*, *folgendermaßen* in the following manner, *meiſtentheils* for the most part; *allenfalls* or *jedenfalls* at all events, *vielmals* many a time, *niemals* never, *damals* at that time, *ehemals* formerly (*früher*, *ehedem*),

meinerseits (was mich betrifft, von meiner Seite, das Meinige) for my part, beiderseits on both sides (von beiden Seiten).

The following are formed in lings: blindlings blindly, häuptlings head foremost, jählings precipitately, rücklings backwards, supinely.

The following are formed by the termination en: außen without, innen within; hinten behind, vorn before; oben above and daben up there, unten (drunten) beneath and hienieden here, in this life; mitten in the middle, hüben on this side, drüben on that side, over there; draußen out of doors.

Dannen, binnen, wannen are only used with von.

Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs take the same form of comparison as adjectives. The superlative of comparison is the form with am: as, am schönsten most beautifully — that is, more beautifully done than any other. The superlative of eminence (when *most* means exceedingly, extremely, in a high degree, without comparison with others) is either the superlative in its simple form: as, freundlichst in a most friendly manner; or it is expressed with the form höchst or äußerst placed before the positive: as, höchst freundlich most amicably, äußerst selten very seldom indeed; or we may use a form with auf: thus, auf's freundlichste, auf's schönste, also zum schönsten and schönstens. Examples: er spricht deutlicher als Karl, aber Johann spricht am deutlichsten von Allen, he speaks more distinctly than Charles, but John speaks the most distinctly of all. Er grüßt auf's freundlichste, he greets in the most friendly manner. Er verrichtet sein Geschäft auf's gewissenhafteste, he carries on his business in the most conscientious way.

The form in ens is preferable in a few adverbs to that with auf's (Wittich's Gr. p. 96), thus:

Auf's beste, auf's schönste, auf's nächste are said or bestens and schönstens and nächstens, instead. but say rather längstens and frühestens, ehestens and höchstens and meistens and wenigstens, spätestens.

The following are irregular in their comparison:

Positive	halb soon	Comp. eher	Super. am ehesten
	gern willingly	lieber	am liebsten
	viel much	mehr	am meisten
	wenig little	{ minder	{ am mindesten
		{ weniger	{ am wenigsten
	gut, wohl well	besser	am besten

List of Adverbs.

N.B. The numbers refer to the remarks on the Expletives, which follow.

Anders otherwise, differently.

Auch 1. also, too, 2. even; auch (selbst) der beste Mann, 3. ever, after wer, was, wie. Wer er auch sei.

Bald 1. soon (eher, am ehesten). 2. almost. 3. bald . . . bald sometimes . . . sometimes, now . . . now; bald hier, bald da.

Da 1. there. Da bin ich, here I am. 2. Expletive, especially after wer. Wer da weiß gut zu thun, und thut es nicht, dem ist es Sünde. So viel Blümlein als da blühen. Compounds, daher from that place, dahin to that place. Drauf und dran! up and at them! Drunter und drüber, all in confusion.

Dann then, at that time, after that.

Denn then, pray. Wo ist er denn? Expl. 1.

Doch 1. yet. 2. pray, with imperatives. 3. with matters of fact, *I hope*; with a future, *I suppose*. Expl. 3, 5, 6.

Dort there; in that place; dorthin to that place.

Durchaus absolutely. Er soll es durchaus thun, I insist on his doing it.

Eben just, exactly. Eben so gut, quite as good. Es ist eben (or gerade) nicht schlecht, it is not exactly bad. Er hat es soeben gethan, he has done it just now. Expl. 18.

Einst, einmal once.

Erst 1. first, not before. 2. no more than, only. Expl. 19.

Etwa perhaps.

Fort on, onwards: sie arbeiteten fort, they continued to work.

Fort und fort, on and on, continually.

- Ganz quite. Ganz und gar altogether.
- Gar very; gar nicht not at all. Expl. 17.
- Gerade exactly, the very, by chance. Expl. 14.
- Gern gladly, willingly. Comp. lieber Super. am liebsten.
- Gut adv. well. Haben Sie gut geschlafen?
- Her from a place (towards the speaker), hin to a place, thither (from the speaker).
- Hier here, at this place; hierher or her hither, to this place; hieselbst in this very place.
- Immer, immerhin always; auf immer for ever. Expl. 10, 12.
- Ja 1. yes, ja wohl certainly. 2. you see, you know. 3. *náy* (for yea), indeed; ja nicht on no account. Expl. 2, 5, 6.
- Je or jemals *ever* used both with past and future.
- Jetzt at present, now.
- Kaum scarcely. Kaum . . . als, no sooner . . . than.
- Lange, lang' long (in point of time). Stundenlang for hours, Meilen weit for miles.
- Mitten in the midst, mitten in der Stadt, in the midst of the town.
- Nein no. Nicht not.
- Nieder down. Nieder mit ihm! down with him.
- Nie, niemals; nimmer or nimmermehr never.
- Noch 1. still, noch nicht not yet. 2. more, noch ein one more. 3. with *so*, it means *ever*. Wenn er auch noch *so* reich wäre; keine noch *so* heilige Stätte, no place however sacred. 4. with a future, *I fear*. Expl. 11, 12.
- Nun now — now that a certain circumstance has taken place.
- Nur only (but), nur wenig but a little.
- Dynehin without this, all the same, besides.
- Schon 1. already, not later than. 2. as much as. 3. certainly, I hope, with a future, while doch means I hope, with matters of fact. Expl. 9.
- Sonst 1. otherwise, else. 2. in former times, formerly.
- So thus, in this manner, so. So! interjection, well! So? ay? indeed? Es ist nur *so so* it is only so so.
- Unten, below, in the lower part; oben above.

Viel much, mehr more, am meisten most.

Vorn in the forepart of.

Wann when? at what hour, time, or date?

Weiter further. Expl. 16.

Wie how, like, in the same manner.

Wieder again.

Wo where? anderswo elsewhere.

Woher from what place, wohin to what place.

Wohl well in health, or in conduct. 2. perhaps. 3. indeed.

Expl. 4, 6, 7, 8.

Zwar indeed, it is true, allowing it. Expl. 13.

Interjections.

Ah! and ach! ah! Au! and au weh! express bodily pain. Ei (colloquial ih!) dear me! Ei, ei! take care. He, heda! (holla, pft!) call attention. Ho! ho, there! Hurrah! hurrah! Leider! alas! O! like the English Oh! expresses pain or pity. Pfui! fie! Topp! done! Zu! zu! on! on!

Expletives¹.

Expletives are modifying adverbs, used to tone down an assertion, or otherwise give a peculiar meaning to it, which cannot always be reproduced by a single word in another language.

1. Denn.

1. When denn is a conjunction, it stands first in its sentence: ich wurde durstig, denn es war heiß, I got thirsty, for it was hot. Er wurde reich, denn er war sparsam, he became rich, for he was economical. 2. When denn is an adverb, it is not put first in its clause. We say es ist denn wahr, it is then true, expressing some surprise. Ist es denn wahr? is it then true? Warum denn? why so? Wollt Ihr denn spazieren gehen? do you then wish to take a walk? 3. Denn, followed by the subjunctive mood, means *unless*. Sie kommen

¹ Wittich gives a good account of these expletives in an appendix to his German Tales.

gewiß, sie müßten denn . . . They are sure to come, unless . . . Ich verzeihe ihm, er müßte denn seinen Fehler leugnen, I forgive him, unless he denies his fault. It is more usual, however, to say es sei denn daß . . ., but neither form is common; we should say wenn nicht. Sie werden darben, es sei denn, daß Sie sparen or, wenn Sie nicht sparen. Sonst means *otherwise*, but implies that a real, actual consequence will follow. Sie müssen sparen, sonst werden Sie darben, you must save, otherwise you will starve.

2. Ja.

1. With imperatives ja means *be sure to*: kommen Sie ja, be sure to come. 2. Ja is our English *yea*; but we now use *noy* in this connection. Alle seine Freunde, ja seine Verwandte verließen ihn, all his friends, nay his relations deserted him. 3. Ja sometimes means *you know, you see*. Er kann nicht kommen, er ist ja krank, he cannot come; he is ill, you know. Geht jetzt nicht aus, es regnet ja, do not go out now, you see it rains. 4. It is often to be translated by a question, expressing some surprise. Ich kann Sie jetzt nicht anhören; Sie sehen ja (wohl), daß ich hier zu thun habe, I cannot hear just now what you have to say; don't you see that I am busy here? 5. Ja, expressing surprise, is often best rendered in English by *why*. Da sind Sie ja! why, there you are!

3. Doch.

1. Doch means properly *yet, nevertheless*; but it is etymologically the same as our English *though*. Dennoch may be written for doch, when the sentence containing doch expresses the consequence or effect; but not, if it expresses the cause or motive. He was in the company and yet he was not invited (a cause), er war in der Gesellschaft und war doch nicht eingeladen. But he was not invited, and yet he was in the company (a result) er war nicht eingeladen und er war doch or dennoch in der Gesellschaft. Doch frequently follows *although*. Obgleich arm, ist er doch ehrlich although

poor, he is honest. 2. Doch has often the sense of *however*, especially when preceded by *aber*. The use of the English word *though* in this sense is provincial. Das geht doch nicht an that cannot be done, though. Ich muß ihn doch mit gewöhnlicher Höflichkeit behandeln, I must however treat him with common civility. Ich kann aber doch nicht glauben, however (but yet) I cannot believe. 3. Doch expresses a hope in regard to a matter of fact, while schon is used in regard to a future event. Sie haben meinen Brief doch erhalten, you have received my letter, I hope. 4. Doch sometimes means *to be sure*, when one is forced to admit something. Ich kann Sie doch nicht loben, I cannot certainly praise you (however willing I may be). Nun sehe ich doch, daß . . . now, to be sure, I see that. . . 5. Doch after an imperative mood means *pray*. Laß mich doch in Ruhe pray, leave me alone. Sometimes people say nicht doch leave me alone, as in English we say *don't*. Sagen Sie mir doch, pray tell me. 6. Doch is sometimes used as an affirmative. Sie haben ihn nicht gesehen? you have not seen him? Doch! yes, I have.

4. Wohl.

1. Wohl expresses *satisfaction* and is used for *well* when applied to health. Dieses gefällt mir sehr wohl, I like this very much. Ich befinde mich wohl, I am well. 2. Wohl expresses likelihood, possibility, conjecture; and is then rendered by *perhaps*, *I daresay*, *I presume*, *I suppose*, or, when joined to an expression of time, *about*. Das geschieht wohl auch bisweilen, that may sometimes happen. Es dauerte wohl zehn Minuten it lasted about ten minutes. In this sense it is frequently joined to the auxiliaries können, dürfen, mögen and werden. Es könnte wohl geschehen, daß . . . it might so happen that. Er wird heute wohl kommen he will come I think (or probably) to-day. 3. It also means *indeed*, *it is true*. Das glaube ich wohl, that I can well believe. Das ist wohl wahr, aber . . . to be sure that is true, but . . .

5. Doch ja and ja doch.

Doch ja with imperatives has much the same sense as ja: gehen Sie doch ja nicht pray don't go on any account. Ja doch means *why, after all*. Sie gehen ja doch nicht, why, after all, you do not go.

6. Doch wohl and ja wohl.

Wohl serves to soften down the meaning of doch and ja. Es ist doch wohl Nichts böses? it is nothing bad, I hope? Sie sehen ja wohl, daß ich zu thun habe. You surely see (or don't you see?) that I am busy. Ja wohl yes, to be sure, certainly.

7. Denn doch and denn wohl.

Denn doch may be translated *really, I must say*. Das heißt denn doch, that is what I call. Denn wohl *I can well believe*. Das war denn wohl ein vergeblicher Versuch, that, I can well believe, was a useless attempt.

8. Denn, Wohl in questions.

Denn and wohl in questions both mean *pray*; but denn *then* is used, when the speaker has some reason to suppose that the person, to whom he is speaking, is acquainted with the subject; whereas wohl does not imply this. Haben Sie es denn gesehen? You speak as if you had seen it, pray have you? Haben Sie es wohl gesehen? I suppose you have seen it, pray have you? Was ist wohl die Ursache davon? Pray, what may be the cause of it? Both particles may occur in the same question, and then the context must determine how they affect it.

9. Schon.

Schon properly means (1) already. Er ist schon angekommen, he has already come. In this sense it is also to be translated (2) *as early as*: ich habe es schon vorige Woche gehört, I heard it as early as last week; or (3) *ever*: haben

Sie schon das Museum gesehen? have you ever seen the Museum? Ich bin schon zwei Jahre in Deutschland, I have been for the last two years in Germany. 4. Schon also means *as many as, as much as*. Ich habe schon sechs Briefe geschrieben, I have already written six letters. Er hat schon ein Pfund Fleisch gegessen he has eaten as much as a pound of meat. 5. With a future schon expresses confidence and may be translated, *I have no doubt, I believe, I hope* (see doch no. 3 and noch no. 4.) Sie werden schon meinen Brief zur rechten Zeit erhalten, you will, I have no doubt, receive my letter at the proper time. Er wird schon kommen he will no doubt come, or he will come, all right. Ich werde ihn schon davon überzeugen, I believe I shall soon convince him of it. 6. With adverbs and adjectives, it sometimes means *quite*. Es ist schon recht or schon gut it is all right. Es ist schon wahr, aber .. it is quite true, all very true, but .. See zwar.

10. Immer.

1. Immer properly means *always*. Er war immer ein rechtschaffener Mann, he was always an honest man. 2. Immer means also *continually*. With comparatives in this sense, it may be translated *more and more*. Er wird immer reicher, or er wird immer reicher und reicher, he becomes continually richer and richer. Es hat die ganze Nacht immer geregnet, it rained continually all the night. It is often translated by the verb *continue*. Seine Verwirrung nahm immer zu, his confusion continued to increase. 3. It sometimes means *ever*, where auch is more commonly used: so reich er immer sein mag, however rich he may be. 4. In questions, it marks impatience for an answer. Wie kam es immer, daß . . ., how did it ever happen that . . . 5. With imperatives immer or immerhin is used to express consent, either on the part of the speaker or of the person spoken to. Sitz nur immer! Sit still, if you like, by all means (Goethe). Thun Sie es immerhin, never mind, do it. Gehen Sie immer voran do but go on before.

11. Noch.

1. Noch means *still, up to this time*; or with comparatives *still more*. *Not yet* is noch nicht. Haben Sie es noch nicht gesehen? have you not seen it yet? Er schlief noch, als ich bei ihm eintrat, he was still sleeping, when I entered his room. Es ist noch besser, it is still better. 2. In this sense it is sometimes translated by *more* or *another*. Thun Sie noch einen Thaler hinzu add one thaler more, or add another thaler. Noch ein Wort (familiarily noch eins) one word more. 3. Wenn followed by auch noch so means *however*. Wenn er auch noch so fleißig wäre, however industrious he might be. 4. Noch expresses *fear* with futures, where schon would express a *hope* or *belief*. Du wirst Dich noch verirren you will, I fear, go out of your way.

12. Noch immer and Immer noch.

Noch immer means *continually* like immer: es regnet noch immer it continues still to rain. Immer noch in reference to future events means *at any time you please*: wir können nachher immer noch schreiben we can write afterwards at any time we please.

13. Zwar.

Zwar means *indeed, it is true*, when followed by an objection with *but*. Das Brod ist zwar schlecht, aber man kann es doch essen the bread, it is true, is bad, but one can still eat it. Schon has also this meaning but not commonly. Und zwar corresponds to the English *and that, and those, and you, and he*. Es ist nicht möglich und zwar aus folgenden Gründen it is not possible and that for the following reasons. Nur einer von ihnen kam und zwar der älteste only one of them came and he the oldest.

14. Recht.

Recht means *well* in the sense of *properly, as it ought to be*. Verstehen Sie die Sache recht, do you understand the matter well, properly. Er spricht dieses Wort nicht recht aus,

he does not pronounce this word properly. 2. With a negative, translate *exactly*. Er wußte nicht recht he did not exactly know. Ich kann es nicht recht sagen. 3. With an adjective, it may be translated *very*, meaning *in a great degree*. Ich bin recht hungrig I am very hungry. Ich weiß es recht wohl or gut I know it very well. Ziemlich gut pretty well.

15. Gerade.

Gerade as an adjective means *even*. An even number eine gerade Zahl; an odd number eine ungleiche Zahl. 2. As an adverb, it means *just, exactly*. Es ist gerade um zwei Uhr it is exactly two (präcis zwei Uhr, es ist Schlag zwei Uhr). Das ist gerade was ich wünsche that is just what I wish. Ich sagte ihm gerade meine Meinung I told him frankly or exactly my meaning. 3. Gerade means what we express in English by the verb *chance*. Ein Mann ging gerade vorbei may either mean: a man was *just* passing by, or a man *chanced* to pass by. See eben.

16. Weiter.

Weiter is the English *further*. Ohne weiter zu rechten without disputing any further. In this sense the English often uses *more*. Wir haben nichts weiter von ihm gehört we have heard no more of him. It may also be translated by the verb *continue* or *go on*. Er fragte weiter he went on to ask.

17. Gar, Sogar.

Sogar means *even, nay even*; but in conversation gar is often used for it. Sogar mein Bruder or selbst mein Bruder even my brother. Er begleitete sie sogar (gar) nach Hause, he even accompanied her home. 2. Before adverbs and adjectives, gar means *very*, and with negatives *not at all*. Gar schöne Blumen very beautiful flowers. Er ist gar zu neugierig he is far too inquisitive. Gar kein Geld no money at all. Gar wenig very little. Gar nicht or ganz und gar nicht not at all. 3. Gar is used with denn, doch, wohl, to express more forcibly the surprise or presumption indicated.

Glaubt er denn gar? Is it possible he thinks so? Er wird Ihnen wohl gar die Sachen bezahlen, I have no doubt he will pay you for the articles.

18. Eben.

1. Eben as an adjective means *level*: eine ebene Oberfläche, a plane. 2. As an adverb, especially with demonstratives, it means *even, very, just*. Eben derselbe Mann the very same man. Das weiß ich eben nicht or gerade nicht or eben gerade nicht, that is the very thing I do not know. Eben so wenig, just as little. Eben so wie even as. 3. Eben means *just* in reference to time. Ich wollte eben gehen, I was just going. Eben jetzt just now.

19. Erst.

1. Erst means *first*. Man muß sich erst an ihn wenden, he must be previously applied to. 2. Erst has the sense of *no more than, not before, no farther back than*. Er ist erst sechszehn Jahre alt he is no more than sixteen years old. Ich habe ihn erst vorigen Sonntag in der Kirche gesehen, I saw him no longer ago than last Sunday in the church. Erst seit Ostern lerne ich Deutsch, I have been learning German only since Easter. Erst jetzt just now. 3. With futures, erst means *not till*. Ich werde erst um sechs Uhr abreisen, I shall not depart till six o'clock. 4. Erst is also used with a future to show that the thing has not yet occurred. Er spricht von Begebenheiten, die erst geschehen sollen, he speaks of events, which are still future, which have still to take place. If he were once here, wenn er nur erst hier wäre, wenn er nur einmal hier wäre, wenn er nur erst einmal hier wäre.

Prepositions.

Prepositions (Vorwörter) are so called because they go before nouns. They are also called in German Verhältnißwörter, because they point out relations between objects.

They are divided into four classes, according to the different cases which they govern.

Prepositions governing the genitive.

Anstatt or Statt instead of. Statt seines Vaters, in His father's stead.

Halben or halber on account of. Halben is employed in combination with pronouns: as, meinethalben, so allenthalben; and sometimes when the noun is preceded by the article or a demonstrative pronoun; generally, we use halber: as, des Geldes halben or halber, des Friedens halben or halber, but only Vergnügens halber, Friedens halber. Halben is abbreviated in deßhalb, weßhalb.

außerhalb without, innerhalb within, oberhalb above, unterhalb below, are compounds of halb.

Diesseits, jenseits or diesseit, jenseit des Flusses u. s. w. on this side of, on the other side of the river &c.

Kraft seines Amtes, seines Auftrages u. s. w., in virtue of his office, his commission &c.

Längs, along, is also found with the dative.

Laut, according to, conformably to the tenor of words, which are either spoken or written: laut des Befehls, des Briefes, des Gesetzes, der Urkunde, according to the command, the letter, the law, the document.

Trotz in spite of: trotz seines Versprechens in spite of his promise. Trotz is also used with the dative: trotz dem daß is used for obſchon, *although*.

Vermittelt by means of: vermittelt or mittelst der Hülfe Gottes, by God's help.

Um — willen for the sake of, the case coming between the two words: um Ihrer Ehre willen for the sake of your honour.

Ungeachtet *notwithstanding* may precede or follow its case. Ungeachtet meines Verbotes or meines Verbotes ungeachtet, in spite of my prohibition. Ungeachtet is also used as a conj. for *although*.

Unweit not far from. Unweit der Stadt or von der Stadt.

Vermöge by dint of, by the power of: vermöge seines Fleißes by means of his industry. Vermöge der Uebung by dint of practice.

Während during. Während des Krieges during the war.

Wegen *on account of* may precede or follow its case. Wegen Schulden or Schulden wegen gefangen sitzen to be in prison for debt.

Zufolge *in consequence of* governs the genitive when it precedes its case, and the dative when it follows its case: thus, zufolge des Befehls, and dem Befehl zufolge, in consequence of the command.

Halben *for*, wegen *because of*, and um — willen *for the sake of*, are combined with the genitive of the personal pronouns, and thus form the compounds meinethalben, deinetthalben, seinethalben, unferthalben, euerthalben, ihrethalben; meinewegen, ihretwegen, um seinetwillen &c.

The peculiarities in the construction of these prepositions, along with most of their meanings, are expressed in the following lines.

The Genitive's the proper case
with unweit; anstatt, statt in place;
according to the tenor laut;
halb compound: außerhalb without;
jenseits, diesseits on this side;
um — willen which you must divide;
halben, halber follow case;
wegen may have either place,
and ungeachtet *notwithstanding*.
Kraft *in virtue of* one's standing;
by means vermittelst and vermöge;
längs des Weges, or dem Wege;
trotz has dessen, dem, in spite;
during während einer Zeit.
Zufolge takes the dative, if
it follows; else, the genitive.

Prepositions governing the Dative.

Auß out; außer out of, on the outside of; bei by, near, with; binnen within, not exceeding; entgegen opposite to, towards, to meet; gegenüber over against, opposite to; mit with;

nebst together with; nächst next; sammt together (expressing participation); seit since; von from or by; zu to; zuwider against.

These prepositions are contained in the following lines.

With Dative case: nebst, sammt and mit,
and gegenüber opposite,
aus, außer out of, seit, nach, von,
zu, nächst or next to, close upon,
entgegen meeting, face to face,
against zuwider follow case.

Prepositions governing the Accusative.

Bis till; durch through; für for; gegen against; ohne without; sonder without; um about; wider against.

These are contained in the following lines.

The Accusative's the proper case
with bis or till some time or place;
with durch, and für, and um about;
with sonder, ohne or without;
with wider meaning opposition,
and gegen any disposition.

Prepositions governing the Accusative and the Dative.

An on or at; auf upon; hinter behind; in in or into; neben beside; über over, above, across; unter under; vor before; zwischen between — govern the accusative, when they denote motion, physical or mental, towards an object, and the dative, when they imply a permanent state of rest.

These are contained in the following lines.

An, auf, über, unter, in,
neben, zwischen, or between,
vor before, and hinter go
with the dative answering Wo?
With accusative they mean
to in answer to Wohin?

Combinations of Prepositions.

1. Contractions, used with the Definite Article.

Some prepositions may be combined with the definite article, as follows:

am	for an dem	aufs	for auf das
beim	„ bei dem	durchs	„ durch das
im	„ in dem	fürs	„ für das
vom	„ von dem	ins	„ in das
zum	„ zu dem	übers	„ über das
zur	„ zu der	ums	„ um das
ans	„ an das	vors	„ vor das

2. Prepositions used after von.¹

1. Auf and an after von mean continuance from the very commencement; von Jugend auf zeigte er viel Fleiß from his youth upwards, he evinced much application; vom Gemeinen auf gedient risen from the ranks; von diesem Tage an kam er täglich, from this day forth he came daily; von hier an wird das Land fruchtbar, from this place. But we say von vorne herein falsch, wrong from the very outset.

2. Ab denotes cessation from a given point, or extending downwards: von der Kirche ab sind alle Häuser abgebrannt, all the houses, extending from the church downwards, are burnt down. Von Morgen ab soll kein Schiff mehr passiren, after tomorrow, no ship shall pass. Aus, along with von, denotes the point of developement or management. Von meinem Fenster aus kann man ferne Gebirge sehen, from my window, one can see distant mountains. Von diesem Hügel aus leitete Napoleon die Schlacht, from this hill, Napoleon directed the battle. Von Rom aus beherrschten die Päbste die Welt, from Rome the popes ruled the world. Von Grund aus zerstört destroyed from the foundation, totally destroyed. Von innen heraus developing from within.

1. See Weisse's Grammar pp. 40, 41.

3. Zu after nach and auf.

Zu follows nach in the sense of *towards*; but, if the object be more limited, it follows auf. Er schwamm nach dem Ufer zu he swam towards the bank. Er ging auf das Licht zu, he went in the direction of the light. Wir steuerten auf den Hafendamm zu, we steered in the direction of the pier.

4. Her and Hin after Prepositions.

Her follows von meaning *from the direction of*. Die Schiffe kommen von England her, the ships are coming from the direction of England. Von oben her from above; von innen her from within; von hinten her from behind; von Alters her or vor Alters of old. Her also follows bis an or bis zu in a similar sense. Bis an den Kanal her or bis zu dem Kanal her sind alle Felder von der Hitze ausgetrocknet, *on the other side of* the canal and *up to* it all the fields are dried up by the heat. Umher and hinterher can be separated. Wir gingen hinter den Bauern her we went behind the peasants. Um die Kirche her stehen Bäume trees are planted about the church.

Hin after nach means *towards*: die Felder, welche nach dem Hügel hin liegen . . the fields which extend towards the hill. Er schleppte ihn nach dem Flusse hin, he dragged him towards the river. Gegen den Aequator, hin, towards the equator. So, after bis an and bis zu. Bis an den Hafen hin or bis zu dem Hafen hin sind alle Felder mit Schnee bedeckt, all the fields are covered with snow as far as the harbour.

Heraus, hinaus, herein, hinein are sometimes preceded by a noun with zu meaning *in by, out by*. Es flog ein Vogel zum Fenster herein, a bird flew in by the window. Zur Thür hinausgehen to go out by the door. Zur Thür hinauswerfen to turn out of doors.

5. Combinations of the Prepositions with *da* there, *wo* where and *hier* here.

<i>woran</i> on or at what,	<i>daran</i> on that,	<i>hieran</i> here on this.
<i>worauf</i> whereon,	<i>darauf</i> thereon,	<i>hierauf</i> hereupon.
<i>woraus</i> out of what,	<i>daraus</i> from that,	<i>hieraus</i> from this.
<i>wobei</i> whereby, near what,	<i>dabei</i> near it,	<i>hierbei</i> near this.
<i>wodurch</i> whereby, through	<i>dadurch</i> ,	<i>hierdurch</i> .
<i>worein</i> whereinto, [what?	<i>darein</i> therein,	<i>hierin</i> , <i>herein</i> .
<i>wofür</i> for what,	<i>dafür</i> for that,	<i>hierfür</i> .
<i>wogegen</i> against what,	<i>dagegen</i> .	<i>hiergegen</i> .
<i>woher</i> whence,	<i>daher</i> thence,	<i>hierher</i> hither.
<i>wohin</i> whither,	<i>dahin</i> that way,	<i>hierhin</i> this way.
<i>wohinter</i> behind what,	<i>dahinter</i> ,	<i>hierhinter</i> .
<i>worin</i> wherein, in what,	<i>darin</i> in it,	<i>hierin</i> in this.
<i>womit</i> wherewith,	<i>damit</i> with that,	<i>hiermit</i> with this.
<i>wonach</i> whereafter,	<i>danach</i> after that,	<i>hiernach</i> .
<i>worüber</i> over or about	<i>darüber</i> over it,	<i>hierüber</i> .
<i>warum</i> wherefore, [what,	<i>darum</i> therefore,	<i>hierum</i> about this.
<i>worunter</i> under what,	<i>darunter</i> .	<i>hierunter</i> .
<i>wovon</i> whence,	<i>davon</i> of that,	<i>hiervon</i> of this.
<i>wovor</i> before what,	<i>davor</i> before it,	<i>hiervor</i> .
<i>wozu</i> whereto,	<i>dazu</i> thereto,	<i>hierzu</i> or <i>hiez</i> to this
<i>wozwischen</i> between what,	<i>dazwischen</i> ,	<i>hiezwischen</i> .

Conjunctions (Bindewörter).

Conjunctions are words which connect two sentences together so as to form a compound sentence, or which connect two members in a sentence, which have a similar construction: the master teaches, and the pupils learn. John and James have left town. He has received letters from France and Italy.

Six conjunctions serve merely to couple sentences or members of a sentence together, without making one of them dependent on the other. They are therefore called

Co-ordinative conjunctions; they do not alter the order of the following sentence. The other conjunctions are called *Subordinative*, because they make the sentence, to which they belong, depend on the other, which is called the Principal. They throw the finite verb in their sentence to the end of it.

List of Conjunctions.

1. Co-ordinative.

Aber but, generally. *Allein but*, when contradicting what has been asserted. *Denn for*. *Oder or*. *Sondern but*, after negatives. *Und and*.

Subordinative.

Als: 1. as *als ob*, *als wenn* as if; 2. than; 3. when; 4. *nichts*, *kein . . . als*, nothing . . . but.

Bevor before, not so common as *ehe*.

Bis till. *Warte bis er kommt*. *Ich wartete bis er kam*.

Da since, as. 2. sometimes, though not so correctly, used for *als* when.

Dafern if, in case (not much in use).

Damit in order that.

Daß that; 1. *auf daß*, sometimes used in the Bible for *damit* in order that; 2. *zu groß . . als daß* too great to; 3. *so daß* so that; 4. *daß nicht* lest.

Ehe: 1. before, referring to time, 2. sooner than, *e'er*, rather than.

Falls, in dem Falle, *daß* in case that.

Je . . . (desto) sometimes, *je . . . je*; or *je . . . um so*, *um so viel* the . . . the, *je nachdem* according as.

Indem as, whilst, often rendered in English by a participle.

Indem er mich an der Hand nahm taking me by the hand.

Nachdem after: *nachdem er dies gesehen hatte*.

Ob whether, *als ob* as if, as though. *Obgleich*, *ob schon*, *obwohl* (in poetry also *ob auch*), though, although.

Seitdem or *seit* since, from the time that.

Sobald, *so oft*, *in so fern*, *in so weit* used elliptically for

jobald als. 2. So . . auch however, 3. so is sometimes used for wenn if.

Ungeachtet, notwithstanding, used for obgleich although.

Während while, during the time when.

Weil *because* denotes a real cause.

Wenn 1. when, whenever, 2. if, wenn nicht unless, 3. als wenn as if, 4. wenn gleich, wenn schon, wenn auch although.

Wie 1. *as*, 2. *when*, especially when the present is used for the imperfect. 3. Wie auch however. 4. Wie wohl although.

Wo *where* is sometimes used as a conjunction meaning if.

Wo möglich if possible, wo nicht if not, wofern in case that, if.

Besides these, there are many adverbs used as connecting words, which do not throw the principal verb in their sentence to the end, *which are distinguished by their standing almost anywhere* — first, second, third, fourth — *in their own sentence, and not necessarily first* like the proper conjunctions; but, if they are placed first, they invert, as other such clauses do, the order of the verb and its subject.

List of Adverbs used as Connective Words.

also accordingly, therefore, thus.	einerseits on the one hand, andererseits on the other hand.
auch also.	endlich finally, at last.
dagegen on the contrary.	entweder either.
daher therefore, hence.	erst first, at first.
dann then, at that time.	ferner further.
darum therefore.	folglich consequently.
demnach accordingly.	gleichwohl nevertheless.
dennoch yet, still, nevertheless.	hernach afterwards, after this present moment.
desgleichen, ingleichen likewise.	hingegen on the contrary.
deshalb, deswegen therefore.	indessen or indeß in the meantime, however.
dessenungeachtet notwithstanding, in spite of that.	in so fern, in so weit so far.
desto (the more, the less).	jedoch however, yet.
doch, jedoch, yet, still, however.	

nachher afterwards.	theils — theils partly — partly.
nicht allein, nicht bloß, nicht nur . . . sondern auch, not only . . . but also.	überdies moreover. um so mehr the more (als). um so weniger the less (als).
nichtsbefstoweniger nevertheless.	unterdessen meanwhile.
noch nor.	vielmehr much more.
nun now, therefore.	viel weniger still less.
nur only.	weder neither (noch nor).
so so, thus.	weiter farther, further.
somit hence.	zuerst, zuletzt first, lastly.
sonach accordingly.	zwar indeed.
sonst else, otherwise.	

**Distinction between Proper Conjunctions and Adverbs
used as connecting words.**

To distinguish between these two classes of connecting words — the conjunction, which throws the verb to the end of its clause, and the connecting adverb, which merely inverts the verb and its subject — it is only necessary to observe that the proper conjunction is always first in its own clause, whereas the adverbial connective may be put first, second, third, or perhaps fourth, as the speaker pleases. A few examples will make this clear. Die Elbe ist zugefroren, daher können die Schiffe nicht nach Hamburg kommen; but we can also say: die Schiffe können daher nicht nach Hamburg kommen, the Elbe is frozen over; the vessels, therefore, cannot come to Hamburg. Das Wetter ist heute kalt, indessen ist es angenehmer als gestern or es ist indessen angenehmer als gestern, the weather is cold to-day; it is, however, more pleasant than yesterday. Mein Vater hat dem Manne Geld gegeben, und außerdem hat er ihn seinem Freunde empfohlen, or und hat ihn außerdem u. s. w. my father has given money to the man; and, besides, has recommended him to his friend. It thus appears that daher, indessen and außerdem are not necessarily first in their clause, and that therefore they are not properly conjunctions, but connective

adverbs. On the other hand, it will be seen that the following must stand first in their clause, and are therefore proper conjunctions. Als ich vor einigen Tagen in London ankam, (so) fand ich meinen Freund nicht when I arrived in London a few days ago, I did not find my friend. Weil er nicht wohl ist, darf er nicht ausgehen, as he is not well, he must not go out. The whole of such a dependent sentence forms a member of the principal one; and, consequently, when a sentence introduced by a proper subordinative conjunction is first, the subject and verb of the principal sentence are inverted. But a clause introduced by an adverbial connective cannot stand first: it must follow the other sentence; and this forms another means of distinguishing the two kinds of connecting words.

Connective Adverbs, which sometimes do not invert the Subject.

When auch also, entweder either, kaum scarcely, weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor, nur only, sogar even, schon already (sometimes also vielleicht perhaps, vermuthlich apparently) have a special reference to the subject and not to the predicate, the subject follows immediately after them and is not inverted. Auch mein Bruder hat es gesagt, kaum eine Stunde war vergangen, schon drei Tage sind vergangen und noch Niemand ist erschienen; nur der Mörder or der Mörder nur ist gehängt worden. (Tiark p. 298). Doch, jedoch, indessen, nun, freilich, wahrlich, in der That and im Gegentheil are sometimes used elliptically, or as words of exclamation, in which case they do not alter the order. Wahrlich, ich sage dir. In der That, ich habe ihm nichts zu sagen. Er hatte versprochen zu kommen, doch er kam nicht, he had promised to come, but he did not. Seine Zunge spricht die Wahrheit, jedoch sein Herz ist falsch.

Part III.

Construction of Sentences.

**Chap. I. On the Construction and Arrangement
of a Simple Sentence.**

Subject and Predicate. A complete sentence (Satz) must contain a Subject (das Subject) and a Predicate (das Prädicat): the subject being the thing spoken of; and the predicate, what is asserted of it. The assertion is made by means of a verb in a **finite mood** — one which is inflected according to the number and person of the subject. When the predicate is a substantive or an adjective, the assertion is made by the verb *sein* which is thus the *copula* between the subject and the predicate. Thus, when we say: gold is very heavy; *gold* is the subject, *is* is the copula, *very heavy* is the predicate. Other auxiliaries, as *haben* and *werden*, which indicate the time or mode of the predicate, serve also as a copula, the participle or infinitive, which is attached to them, being thrown to the end of the sentence.

Object. A transitive verb is one which expresses an action done directly or indirectly to some person or thing. The *direct* (or suffering) object (directes Object), which is merely acted upon, is put in the accusative case. The *indirect* object or recipient is put in the dative. Examples: I bought a horse. He wrote a letter. They told the story to their neighbours.

Complement of the Predicate. Ergänzung des Prädicats.

When the verb of a sentence has a word or clause attached to it, without which the verb would not form perfect sense, this word or clause is called the *complement*. *He was made a god* means that he was deified; *the house was set on fire* means, not that the house was set, but that

it was kindled. *Romulus was the founder of Rome*: here it is necessary to add something to make the sense of *was* complete. Thus, the *grammatical complement* is that which makes the verb complete in its predication.

Extension of the Predicate, Erweiterung des Prädicats.

Adverbs or adverbial clauses, expressing the time, manner, place or circumstance, under which an action takes place, are Extensions of the Predicate: I was walking in the garden; he arrived three days ago; he spoke with dignity.

Attribute das Attribut. What can be asserted or predicated of any person or thing, may be joined to the same as an attribute; that is, it may be used to mark or define the subject or object, when we are making some other assertion about it. Thus, if in one sentence I can say: “the house is high” or “the house is on the hill”, then in another sentence, I can make use of these facts to determine what house I mean, and say: the high house on the hill belongs to a friend of mine. In the former sentence, *high* and *on the hill* are predicates; in the latter, they are attributes. The form of the attribute may be (1) an adjective (or participle); (2) a substantive in apposition, agreeing in case; (3) a substantive in the genitive expressing the possessor, or the object, or the whole of which the thing described is a part, or the quality of it; (4) a substantive with a preposition.

The regular order in a simple sentence is:

1. The subject with its attributes.
2. The finite verb, after which naturally comes any adverb or adverbial clause of time, which is of the same kind as the tense expressed by the finite verb.
3. The Object.
4. Adverbs or adverbial clauses expressing some circumstance. The manner is last, next to the predicate, unless the predicate be closely connected with place as *come*, *bring* &c., in which case the place is next to it.
5. The complement of the predicate.

6. The predicate, that is, the past participle and infinitive — the parts not contained in the copula or finite verb.

1. The subject and its attributes.

a. The genitive, if it denotes possession, may stand either before or after the noun which is possessed: as, *das Haus des Vaters* or *des Vaters Haus*. In the latter case, *Haus* does not require the definite article. But if the genitive be a partitive genitive, or if it express the object or the quality, then it cannot come first. So, likewise, a substantive with a preposition follows the noun, on which it is dependent: as, *die Erziehung der Kinder* the education of children, *die Erfindung des Schießpulvers*, *der Schöpfer der Welt* the Creator of the world. *Ein Sperling in der Hand ist besser als eine Taube auf dem Dache*.

b. Adjectives and participles usually precede the words to which they belong: as, *ein guter Vater*, *ein liebender Vater*. When such attributes govern cases, the cases precede them: as, *ein seine Kinder zärtlich liebender Vater*, a father who loves his children dearly. *Die Früchte tragende Erde*, the earth bearing fruits.

c. When particular stress is to be laid on the adjective or participle, it is either put after the noun, or a relative sentence is made of it: thus, *Friedrich der Zweite*, Frederick the second. *Der blinde Führer* or *der Führer, der blind ist*, kann nicht leiten. *Der Süngling, weise, gut und brav*, widerstand den Versuchungen und Drohungen, womit er bestürmet wurde. *Alcuin, ein Engländer, geboren in York*, hat sich um die Wissenschaften sehr verdient gemacht.

d. When a participle, following in this way a noun, has an object attached to it, the object may either precede or follow the participle. We can say: *der an meinen Vater geschriebene Brief* or *der Brief an meinen Vater geschrieben* or *der Brief geschrieben an meinen Vater*. It may also stand as an introductory clause: *dies Alles bei mir denkend*, schließ ich ein. But the participle is not inflected, if it follows the noun or is introductory.

All sometimes follows the noun, and in this case the noun, to which all is joined, gets the article, which is omitted if all precedes the noun. Thus we may say: die Knaben alle instead of alle Knaben.

In the same way, we say Gott allein, Geld genug, ich selbst I myself. Mein Bruder selbst. When selbst precedes, it means *even*. Selbst seine Feinde loben ihn, even his enemies praise him.

2. The Finite Verb. Inversion of the subject and the finite verb.

The finite verb comes regularly, as in English, immediately after the subject and its attributes; but it precedes the subject in the following cases:

a. in direct questions, unless the interrogative word be itself the subject or depend upon the subject, like an adjective or a genitive. Wollen Sie mit mir gehen? Welcher Knabe hat es gesagt? Wessen Buch liegt auf dem Tische?

b. in imperative sentences, and in the expression of a wish by means of mögen. Liebe deinen Nächsten wie dich selbst. Wilhelm, hole mir den Hut, bring me the hat, William. Möge er lange leben, may he live long. Möchtet ihr glücklich leben! Möge es der Himmel geben. But if we omit mögen, we may say: der Himmel gebe es or gebe es der Himmel! may heaven grant it!

c. When the conjunction wenn *if* is omitted. Wäre ich an seiner Stelle gewesen, so hätte ich anders gehandelt, had I been in his place, I should have acted differently.

d. in the expression of a quotation. Der Mann, sagte er, ist unschuldig. Das Buch, glaube ich, ist gut geschrieben.

e. in expressions of surprise, generally with doch or ja. Habe ich doch nie so etwas gesehen! never did I see such a thing!

f. when any member of a sentence is taken out of its place and put for emphasis at the beginning, the verb and the subject are inverted. Heute bin ich sehr beschäftigt, today I am very much occupied. Vor einigen Wochen besuchte ich einen Franzosen, a few weeks ago, I visited a Frenchman.

Only one such member can in German precede the finite verb; but in English, on the contrary, several members can precede it, and no inversion need take place. Formerly, in this district, whole forests were cut down, in dieser Gegend sind ehemals ganze Wälder umgehauen worden.

g. When a dependent sentence precedes the principal one, there is an inversion in the latter; the dependent sentence having the same effect as any other member put before the subject. See dependent sentences.

3. **The Object** comes after the finite verb and before the adverbial clauses, except that expressing *time*. The object is either direct and in the accusative, or indirect in the dative. The relative position of these is as follows:

a. If one of these objects be a personal pronoun and the other a noun, the pronoun precedes the noun. Er hat es meinem Nachbar erzählt, he has told it to my neighbour; er hat mir seinen Sohn empfohlen.

b. When both objects are nouns, the accusative precedes the dative; but, if one object be a person and the other a thing, the dative of the person precedes the accusative of the thing. Ich habe Ihren Sohn meinem Bruder empfohlen, I have recommended your son to my brother. Er hat seinem Freunde ein Geschenk gegeben, he has given his friend a present.

c. When both objects are pronouns, the accusative precedes the dative, but a pronoun of one syllable precedes one of more than one. Sie haben es mir gegeben, you have given it to me. Soll ich ihm den Stock geben? ja, geben Sie ihm denselben. Shall I give him the stick? yes, give it to him.

4. **Adverbial Phrases (Extension of the Predicate).**

When there are several sorts of circumstances, telling how, when, and where the action takes place, **the time** follows immediately after the finite verb, being connected with the tense, and thus comes before the object, unless the object be definite or brought prominently forward. Er hat vor drei Tagen einen Brief erhalten, he received a letter three

days ago; but er hat diesen Brief vor drei Tagen erhalten, he has received this letter three days ago. Any accidental circumstance comes immediately after the object. Sometimes the place is merely such a circumstance: ich habe auf dem Lande sehr glücklich gelebt or sehr glücklich auf dem Lande gelebt; but if the place is very closely connected with the predicate, it comes last of all — as is the case with verbs of *sending*, *bringing*, *setting* and such verbs as *to be* or *to dwell*, which imply some place to which we send or bring, or where we are or dwell. Er kam am sechsten Juni bei einem heftigen Gewitter in London an, he came to London, during a violent storm, on the sixth of June. Die Soldaten banden mich aus Bosheit an einen Baum. When there are several circumstances, not essentially connected with the predicate, the manner is last, coming after the cause or condition, if any be mentioned. Einige Leute schlafen im Sommer unter der Predigt leicht ein, some people fall asleep readily, during the sermon, in summer.

The adverb nicht stands immediately before the predicate (and its complements), or in its place, if the whole sentence is to be negated; but, if only one member is to be negated, it stands before that member. Er lernt seine Aufgabe nicht, he does not learn his lesson. Er lernt seine Aufgabe nicht gut not well. Wir sprechen nicht von diesem Buch, not of it. Ich werde nicht früh aufstehen, I shall not rise early. Er hat nicht alle seine Freunde gesehen, he has not seen *all* his friends.

5. The Complement. Complements, that is, nouns or clauses, which are required to complete the verb in its predication, follow the adverbial clauses, coming immediately before the non-finite part of the predicate, or in its place, if it be wanting. Such phrases as zu Hülfe kommen, zu Stande bringen, bei Seite setzen, im Stiche lassen, fest halten, stille stehen, zu Mittag essen, are in this way construed like separable compound verbs, the prefix of which is always at the end of the sentence. The verb *to be*, when it does not predicate mere existence, requires a complement. Ich bin gerade nicht bei Geld, I happen to be short of money.

Factitive objects are also complements. They are, first, **real factitives** expressed by *zu* after *werden*, *machen*, *wählen*, *ernennen*, *gereichen*, *hinreichen*, *nützen*, *taugen*; by *in* after *verwandeln*, *theilen*, *zerlegen* and similar verbs; and by the simple noun after *bleiben*, *werden*. Examples: *das Wasser wird Eis* or *zu Eis*. *Sein Beispiel diene wenigstens zur Warnung*. *Deutschland zerriß in zwei politische Parteien*. Secondly, when we advise or compel one *to*, we have a **moral factitive**; *ich rathe ihm zum Frieden*. Thirdly, after *halten*, *erklären*, *ausgeben* &c. a **logical factitive** is expressed by *für* (*Einen für einen Verräther erklären*, *sich für einen Arzt ausgeben*); by the simple case after *nennen*, *heißen*, *schelten* (*Homerus nannte den Agamemnon einen Hirten der Völker*); and by *als* after *ansehen*, *betrachten*, *erscheinen*, *darstellen* &c. (*Bis hierher waren die Protestanten als Rebellen angesehen*.)

The infinitive (with *zu*) is also reckoned as a complement. *Er entschloß sich, es zu thun*, he resolved to do it. It should rather be treated as a shortened noun sentence, being placed *after* the predicate of the sentence on which it depends. See Noun Sentence.

6. **The predicate** may be either a simple verb or composed of several verbs. In the latter case, the participle and infinitive are thrown to the end of the sentence, and come in the reverse order of the English, the governing words being last. The child must be punished, *das Kind muß bestraft werden*. He will have got up, *er wird aufgestanden sein*. *Er ist krank gewesen*.

When more than two verbs come together at the end, one of which is the auxiliary *haben* and another an auxiliary of mood, then *haben* is put first and the auxiliary of mood last: *er sollte mir eine solche Antwort nicht haben sagen lassen*, he should not have sent me such an answer. *Mein Bruder würde in dem Falle den Brief nicht haben schreiben können*, my brother, in that case, would not have been able to write the letter.

A good General Rule for the arrangement of the different adverbial clauses and complements is to put them in the reverse order of the English. The reason of this is that the predicate in English comes before these adjuncts, which follow in order as they are more or less closely connected with it; whereas, in German, the place of the predicate is

at the end of the sentence, and the most essential adjuncts, coming next to it, are last. The object however is, as in English, immediately after the finite verb and the time.

Emphatic Words and their Place in the sentence.

In order to make any member of a sentence emphatic, we must put it out of its natural place. The most ordinary place, to which it is removed, is the commencement of the sentence. Of this we have already spoken, when treating of the position of the finite verb and the subject. Another emphatic place is immediately before the object; in this place, we frequently find the cause or purpose when it is emphatic. *Ich konnte ihm vor Freude keine Antwort geben,* I could not give him any answer for joy. The time is made emphatic by being removed to the end of the sentence. *Wenn Sie es heute nicht wünschen, so will ich es Ihnen mit Vergnügen auch morgen schicken,* if you do not wish it to-day, I will send it to you with pleasure to-morrow.

Summary of Remarks on the Construction and Arrangement of a Simple Sentence.

Subject, Copula, Predicate.

Verbs finite have subjects in nominative case,
and follow the same, in the copula's place;
The participle or the infinitive goes
to the non-finite predicate's place, at the close.
In questions, the subject and verb are reversed,
and when some other member emphatic goes first:
*Wo blüht die Citrone? or kennst Du das Land?*¹
*Als Beweis seiner Freundschaft giebt Jemand die Hand.*²

The Attribute.

Whatever we predicate, that is, affirm,
we may also attribute, describing the term:
die Städte zerstört von dem Feinde; or say:
der gestern am Abend gefallene Schnee.

Apposition.

Two nouns put together: as, William the king, expressing the same not a different thing, must agree in their case: as, der Monat December das Königreich England not England's, remember.

Attributive Genitive.

When a genitive's joined to them, nouns are defined by the owner, the object, the whole, or the kind: des Königs Gewalt,³ die Verheerung des Landes,⁴ der Letzte des Stammes,⁵ ein Mann hohen Standes.⁶

Object.

When the action, expressed by a verb, must be done to some object, the verb is a transitive one; the object direct or accusative case obtains, in the passive, the nominative's place.

When the verb takes the dative — *he's flattered* — we can say es wird ihm geschmeichelt, or turn it by man.

The dative comes after accusative case, but give pronouns and persons precedence in place.

Adverbial Phrase. Complement.

The adverbial phrase follows object, unless it signify time or have special stress.

Time follows verb finite, connected with tense;

place next to a predicate similar in sense,

as in *coming* and *sending*, of course, there is meant a place to which something may come or be sent.

After object, **the circumstance; manner** then goes;

the predicate's **complement** comes at the close,

which is joined to the verb to make meaning of it;

the arrangement in English is just opposite.

1. Where does the lemon tree bloom? dost thou know the country? 2. As a proof of friendship, a person gives his hand; 3. the towns destroyed by the enemy; 4. the snow which fell last evening; 5. the king's power (owner); 6. the devastation of the country (object); 7. the last of the race (whole); 8. a man of high position (quality or kind).

Chap. II. Dependent Sentences, Satzgefüge.

A Dependent or Subordinate Sentence does not form complete sense by itself; it must be taken together with, and as forming part of, another sentence called the Principal Sentence. In German, the finite verb in a dependent sentence is thrown to the end; and, if the dependent sentence come before the principal, then the subject and verb of the latter are inverted.

Dependent Sentences are of three kinds, according as they represent or stand in the place of an adjective, an adverb or a noun.

The Attributive Sentence

is introduced by one of the relative pronouns, which have been already treated of. We may therefore refer the student to the chapter on pronouns, merely remarking that such a sentence serves to describe or define a noun.

Adverbial Sentences.

Adverbial Sentences point out (1) the place, (2) the time, (3) the manner or intensity, (4) the cause, condition, or purpose of the action expressed by the predicate.

1. Adverbial Sentences of Place are introduced by the relative adverbs *wo* where, *wohin* whither, to which place; and *woher* whence, from which place. The corresponding demonstrative adverbs *da* there, *dahin* thither, *daher* thence, may or may not go in the principal sentence. *Wo das Aas ist, da sammeln sich die Adler*, where the carcase is, there the eagles gather together. *Gehen Sie (dahin), wohin die Pflicht Sie ruft* go where duty calls you. But the demonstrative *must* be expressed, when the accessory sentence requires a different relative. *Ich komme daher, wo er wohnt* I come from the place, where he lives. *Ich wohne da, wohin Niemand kommt*, I live where no one comes. *Ich gehe dahin wo er wohnt*, I go where he lives. These sentences must not be confounded with noun sentences: as, *ich weiß wo er ist*, I know where he is.

2. Adverbial sentences of Time are introduced by the following conjunctions:

als, da when	nachdem after
wann, wenn when	ehe (bevor) before
indess, indessen whilst	seit or seitdem since
während while.	bis till.

Als and da are joined to a past tense and refer to a definite event. Als ich zu Hause kam, ging ich zu Bette when I came home, I went to bed. Wenn is used with a present, past, or future tense; but, if used with a past tense, it means indefinitely *whenever*. Wenn er nach London kam means *whenever* he came to London. Als er nach London kam means *on one occasion when* he came.

Wann is now used only as an interrogative asking a question, or forming a dependent noun sentence. Wann werden Sie schreiben? when will you write? Wißt Ihr, wann unser Lehrer zurückkommen wird? do you know when our teacher will come back?

Während *while* is used, when an event occurs during the time that another lasts, when the action expressed by the accessory sentence is of longer duration (Wittich § 391). Während er noch sprach, trat der Kaufmann herein, whilst he was yet speaking, the merchant entered. Manche lesen während sie essen, many read while they are eating. Indem *when* or *whilst* is used, when the action expressed by the accessory sentence is a definite point of time (= the moment when), or when it expresses another circumstance exactly co-existent with that in the principal sentence. Indem ich diese Worte sagte, trat der Kaufmann herein, whilst I was uttering these words, the merchant entered. Indem is often translated in English by a participle, or by the coordinate conjunction *and*. Er nahm Abschied, indem er mir aufs freundlichste die Hand drückte, he took leave of me, shaking (or and shook) hands most kindly. Indem er sich auf sie stützte, kam er die Treppen langsam herauf, supporting himself on her, he slowly ascended the stair. Columbus war der

älteste von vier Kindern, indem er zwei Brüder und eine Schwester hatte (having).

The conjunctions **ehe** before, **nachdem** after, **seit** or **seitdem** since, and **bis** till, are employed in the same way as the corresponding conjunctions in English. *Bevor* is not so common as *ehe*. *Ehe* man ein neues Kleid anzieht, muß man die Hände rein waschen, before putting on a new dress, one must wash one's hands clean. *Nachdem* wir miteinander gefrühstückt hatten, gingen wir spazieren, after breakfasting together, we took a walk. *Ich* habe nichts von ihm gehört, seitdem er das letzte Mal in meinem Hause war. *Warten* Sie, bis ich meinen Brief vollendet habe. *Ich* wartete, bis er zurückkam.

As soon as is *sobald* als or merely *sobald*; *scarcely had... when*, *kaum* hatte... als. *Kaum* hatten wir den Gipfel des Berges erstiegen, als das Gewitter losbrach, *scarcely had* we got upon the summit of the mountain, when the storm broke out. *Sobald* (als) er ankam, ging er zu Bette, as soon as he came, he went to bed. *Sobald* sie den Wald betraten, erblickten sie menschliche Wohnungen, they had no sooner entered the wood, than they perceived the habitations of men.

Adverbial Sentences of Manner and Intensity.

Manner is expressed by *wie* and by *als*, the corresponding demonstrative in the principal sentence being *so*. *Wie* means in the same manner as; *als* refers to the degree, to such an extent as, greater *than* &c. *Seid* klug wie die Schlangen, und ohne Falsch wie die Tauben, be wise as serpents and guile less as doves. *Er* ist größer or eben so groß als *Du*, he is taller or quite as tall as you. *Er* ist liebevoll wie ein Vater, he is affectionate in the same way as a father. *Er* ist ebenso liebevoll als ein Vater, he is quite as affectionate as a father. *Er* schreibt eben so schnell als der Redner spricht, he writes just as fast as the orator speaks. *Wie* der Herr, so der Knecht, like master like man. *Ich* spreche (so) wie ich denke I speak as I think.

When the accessory sentence precedes the principal, then both sentences have *so*. Thus, he is as pretentious as

he is learned, er iſt ſo anmaßend als gelehrt or ſo gelehrt er iſt, ſo anmaßend iſt er auch. So hoch er ſtand, ſo tief war ſein Fall.

Als ob and **als wenn**, meaning *as if*, are followed by the subjunctive. Es hat das Anſehen, als wenn es regnen wollte it has the appearance as if it would rain. Thut, als wenn Ihr zu Hauſe wäret, do as if you were at home. Er ſieht aus, als ob er unwohl wäre; or we may leave out wenn and ob, and ſay: er ſieht aus, als wäre er krank, he appears as if he were ill; er thut als wäre er unſchuldig, he acts as if he were innocent.

Sobald als as soon as, **ſo lange als** as long as, in ſo fern als in so far as, ſo oft als as often as, ſo weit als as far as, often leave out als. Man lernt ſo lange man lebt or als man lebt, one learns as long as one lives. So weit (als) das Auge reichete, ſah man nichts als eine wüſte Ebene, as far as the eye could reach, one saw nothing but a desolate plain. In ſo fern als er Dein Vormund iſt, hat er Recht, in so far as he is your guardian, he has the right.

The English *the* — *the* followed by comparatives is rendered in German by je in the accessory sentence, and deſto in the principal. Je laſterhafter die Menſchen ſind, deſto mehr Unruhe haben ſie the more vicious men are, the more diſquietude, trouble, they have. Je wärmer die Luſt iſt, deſto leichter iſt ſie the warmer the air is, the lighter it is. If the principal sentence comes first, then deſto muſt not be the first word. Ihr Bruder wird deſto eher nach Paris kommen, je eher er von London abreißt, your brother will get ſooner to Paris, the ſooner he leaves London. Obſerve that when the principal sentence is first, the English may drop „the“.

A Consequence is expressed in German by ſo daß, and in English by *so — that*, *so — as to*, *such — as to*. Er ſpricht ſo ſchnell, daß man ihn nicht verſtehen kann he ſpeaks so fast that one cannot understand him. Er war ſo tief in Gedanken, daß er Niemand bemerkte he was so absorbed in thought as not to notice any one.

Such expressions, as *too great to*, *too weak to*, are translated in German zu groß als daß, zu schwach als daß with subj. Sein Verbrechen ist zu groß, als daß man es ihm vergeben könnte, his crime is too great to be forgiven him. Er ist zu schwach, daß er seine Vertheidigung versuchte, he is too weak to attempt his defence. When the subject of both sentences is the same, the German may also have the infinitive with zu or um zu, as in English. Er ist zu schwach, seine Vertheidigung zu versuchen. Er ist zu ehrlich, um eine Unwahrheit zu reden.

Adverbial Sentences of Cause, Condition, Concession.

Causality is expressed by the conjunctions da since and weil because. A sentence, which is introduced by weil, contains the *real* cause, the cause of the thing itself: as, er kann nicht kommen, weil er ein Bein gebrochen hat, he cannot come because he has broken his leg. Er trinkt Wasser, weil der Arzt ihm Wein verboten hat, he drinks water, because the doctor has forbidden him to drink wine. A sentence, which is introduced by da, expresses the reason of one's belief or knowledge, which may be the effect as well as the real cause of the thing believed. Da er nicht gekommen ist, so muß er krank sein, as he has not come, he must be ill. Da die Musik unmittelbar auf das Gefühl wirkt, so ist sie die geistigste aller Kräfte, as music acts immediately on the feelings, it is the most spiritual of all forces. Ich kann fröhlich scheiden, da meine Augen diesen Tag gesehen haben. Wir schliefen bald ein, da (or weil) wir müde waren.

The real ground may be expressed more specially by combining da in the principal clause with von to denote active cause, with durch to denote the means, with aus, her or an to denote the ground of knowledge, followed by daß in the adverbial clause. Er ist davon krank geworden, daß er zu viel gegessen hat, he has become ill by eating too much. Er hat dadurch sein Vermögen verloren, daß er Andern zu viel traute, he has lost his property by trusting too much to others. Ich erkannte ihn daran, daß er stammelte, I recognised him by his stammering. Ich schließe dies daraus, daß ... I con-

clude this from.... Ich weiß es daher, daß.... I know it from.....

A Conditional Clause is introduced by the conjunction *wenn*; and, when it precedes the principal clause, the latter generally begins with *so*. Wenn dieser Krieg lange währt, so gerathen wir in das äußerste Elend if this war lasts long, we fall into the greatest misery. Wenn ihr tapfer fechtet, so werdet ihr siegen, or ihr werdet siegen, wenn ihr tapfer fechtet, you will conquer if you fight bravely. *Wenn* is sometimes omitted, in which case the verb assumes the interrogative or imperative form, and *so* is then seldom omitted. Gibst du dem Narren einen Finger, so will er die ganze Hand haben, if you give a fool a finger, he will have the whole hand. Bricht ein Ring, so bricht die ganze Kette, if a ring breaks, the whole chain breaks. Suchet, so werdet ihr finden seek and ye shall find. *So* was sometimes used instead of *wenn*. So ihr bleiben werdet in meinem Worte, so seid ihr wahrhaftig meine Jünger John VIII. 31. So der Herr will, so werden wir leben und dieses oder jenes thun James IV. 15. *Sollte* may also be used with or without *wenn*, when a definite future or imperative follows. Wenn er ankommen sollte, or sollte er ankommen, so muß er warten, if he should come, he must wait.

If the condition is one that cannot be accomplished, or if we suppose something to have occurred which in point of fact did not occur, the subjunctive is used. Wenn ich Geld hätte, so würde ich dieses Haus kaufen, if I had money (implying that I have not) I should buy this house. Ich würde Sie besucht haben, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte, I should have visited you, if I had had time. Wenn die Sonne vom Himmel fielen, so säßen wir alle im Dunkeln, if the sun should fall from heaven, we should all sit in the dark. Könnte der Narr schweigen, so wäre er weise if the fool could hold his tongue, he would be a wise man.

Concessive sentences are introduced by the compound conjunctions *wenngleich*, *wennschon*, *wennauch*; or *obgleich*, *ob-*

ſchon, obwohl meaning *although*, and when these are first, the principal sentence commonly begins with ſo. These conjunctions are often separated by other words. Obwohl er all ſein Geld verloren hatte, ſo hörte er doch nicht auf zu ſpielen, (or ob er ſchon) although he had lost all his money he did not cease to play. Affen bleiben Affen, wenn man ſie auch in Sammt kleidet, apes remain apes, although they be dressed in velvet. After ſo, doch or dennoch (see Expletives) is often used. Obwohl er ſah, daß Niemand zuhörte, ſo fuhr er dennoch fort zu ſprechen, although he saw that no one listened, yet he continued to speak. The concessive sentence, like the conditional, frequently assumes the interrogative form, dropping wenn: as, wäre er auch fleißig, ſo könnte er doch ſeine Familie kaum erhalten. Spricht er gleich wie ein Weiſer, ſo handelt er doch wie ein Narr. Obwohl ſie krank iſt or iſt ſie auch krank, ſo geht ſie doch aus, ... although she is sick, yet she goes out.

Concessive sentences, expressed in English by *whoever*, *whatever*, *however*, are expressed in German by the interrogatives *wer*, *waß* and *wie*, followed by *auch*. Wer er auch ſei, den Geſetzen ſoll er gehorchen, whoever he is, he must obey the laws. Waß der Menſch auch zu leiden habe, ſo muß er doch nicht verzagen, whatever a man has to suffer, he must not despair. Wie ſonderbar eß auch ſei (oder ſein mag), ſo iſt eß nicht neu. Waß auch erfolge, eß muß geſchehen. Sometimes ſo is used instead of *wie*, and *auch* may in this case be omitted. Er kann, ſo (or *wie*) arm er auch iſt, unß allen ſchaden; or er kann, ſo (or *wie*) arm er iſt, unß allen ſchaden, however poor he is, he can injure us all. Ich betrachte ihn, ſo unſchuldig er außſieht, alß meinen ärgſten Feind, however innocent he appears, I regard him as my worst enemy.

Purpose.

A purpose is expressed by *damit* or *daß* with the subjunctive mood. Er ſpart ſein Geld, damit er im Alter nicht Mangel leide, he is saving his money, that he may not suffer want in his old age. Er zeigte ihm die Gefahr, damit

er sie vermeide, he pointed out the danger to him, that he might avoid it. Ziele gut daß du den Apfel treffeſt, aim well that you may hit the apple. Auf daß is rather antiquated. Ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe auf Erden (Luther's Bible).

A purpose is also expressed by zu with the infinitive (with or without um). Er ging nach Rom (um) ſeine Studien zu vollenden, he went to Rome to finish his studies.

Mögen may be used as an auxiliary, in subordinate clauses of purpose, instead of the bare subjunctive. Ich habe es ihm vorausgeſagt, damit er ſich darauf vorbereiten möge, I have told him beforehand, that he may be prepared. Er ſchrieb noch einmal, damit man ihn nicht mißverſtehen möchte, he wrote once more, that no one might misunderstand him.

The Noun Sentence.

Subordinate noun sentences may stand as the subject or object of the principal verb. They are introduced (1) by the conjunctions daß that and ob whether. Daß du geneſen biſt (subject), macht mir große Freude, that you have recovered (or your having recovered) gives me great joy. Der Gedanke, daß wir unſterblich ſind, ſtärkt mich, the thought that we are immortal supports me. Here the noun sentence is in apposition to the subject. Ich geſtehe, daß ich einen Fehler begangen habe (object), I confess that I have committed a blunder. Ich weiß nicht ob er am Leben iſt, I do not know if he is alive. Frage den Wirth, ob er guten Wein hat (Prov.). Es ſometimes goes with the verb: as, die That bewährt es, daß er die Wahrheit ſpricht, the fact proves that he speaks the truth.

2. Noun sentences are also introduced by interrogative words. Ich weiß nicht, warum er nicht angekommen iſt, I do not know why he has not come. Was ihn dazu gezwungen hat, wird Niemand erfahren, no one will learn what has forced him to that. When interrogative words ask questions, they invert the order of the verb and its subject (if separable from the interrogative); but if they are used to introduce dependent sentences, they throw the verb of the sentence to the end.

Indirect Narration.

1. Verbs expressing an assertion or a statement made by another, and reporting it not as a positive fact known to the speaker or writer, but as the words of another, are followed in German by the subjunctive. Such verbs are *sagen* to say, *behaupten* to assert, *erzählen* to relate &c. introducing what is called an Indirect Speech or Narration.

The dependent verb in the subjunctive is generally in the same tense which the speaker employed when he first used the words. *Sie sagten dem Manne, daß er ein Betrüger sei,* they told the man that he was an impostor. *Der Wächter behauptete daß er die Reiter nicht gesehen habe,* the watchman asserted that he had not seen the horsemen. Here the words directly used were: *Du bist ein Betrüger, ich habe die Reiter nicht gesehen.* In these sentences, *daß* may be omitted, and then the verb is not thrown to the end. *Er sagte, er sei krank gewesen,* he said he had been ill. *Ich habe ihm versichert, du werdest ihn beschützen.*

The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are sometimes used instead of the present, and these are preferable, when the form of the present subjunctive does not differ from that of the present indicative, that is, when the verb is not in the third pers. sing. or part of the verb *sein*. *Er behauptete, das Gesetz sei gut, die Menschen wüßten es nicht zu schätzen;* he maintained that the law was good, that men did not know how to value it. *Ein Bote meldete uns, daß die Bauern das Rathhaus belagerten,* a messenger announced to us that the peasants were besieging the townhall. *Alle gestanden endlich, sie könnten das Räthsel nicht lösen,* all confessed at length that they could not solve the riddle. *Ich antwortete, ich schreibe Briefe* or *ich hätte Briefe geschrieben,* I answered that I was writing letters, or that I had written letters. But *er antwortete, er schreibe Briefe* or *er habe Briefe geschrieben.* In the former sentence, *ich schreibe* is avoided, because it might be the present indicative; and the speaker reporting his former assertion, uses the subjunctive, as if he were a different person.

The Indicative, however, follows these verbs, when the thing is spoken of as an objective fact. Sie haben mir erzählt, daß mein Freund gestorben ist, they told me of my friend's death, speaking of it as a reality. Sie haben mir erzählt, mein Freund sei gestorben or daß mein Freund gestorben sei. They told me that he was dead, such was their report. Mein Vater sagt, er hat es gesehen. Meine Mutter schreibt mir daß sie wohler ist, my mother writes me that she is better. The speaker would naturally adopt the statements of his father and mother as his own.

2. Such verbs as glauben to believe, denken to think, schließen to conclude, hoffen to hope, fürchten to fear, zweifeln to doubt, express the ideas, though not the statements, of another. When the time is past, these verbs are followed, as in the previous class of verbs, by the subjunctive — that is, by the imperfect subjunctive or the present used in its stead, and by the pluperfect subjunctive or the perfect used in its stead. But when the time is present or future, these verbs are followed either by the subjunctive or by the indicative (present, perfect or future), but the tendency of the language is to drop the subjunctive. Ich vermuthete daß er krank wäre or sei, I supposed that he was ill. Ich glaubte, sie hätten mich betrogen, I thought they had cheated me. But, er fürchtet daß es ihnen nicht gelingen werde or wird, he fears that you will not succeed. Ich hoffe daß er kommen werde or wird I hope he will come.

3. Verbs having interrogative sentences depending on them, also take the pres. or imp. subj. when the time is past, but may either have the subj. or the ind. when the time is present, perfect or future. Er fragte, ob mein Vater zu Hause wäre or sei, he asked if my father were at home. Ich fragte ihn, ob er sie kenne or kennte, I asked him if he knew her. But, ich verstehe nicht, wie er diesen Auftrag ausführen werde or wird, I do not understand how he will execute this commission.

4. When the verb expresses *knowledge, certainty, seeing, showing*, the indicative should be used. Ich war gewiß, daß

er es nicht gethan hatte, I was certain that he had not done it. Er wußte nicht was um ihn vorging, he did not know what was going on around him.

5. Such verbs as wünschen to wish, befehlen to order, bitten to ask, raten to advise, erlauben to permit, es ist nöthig it is necessary, es ist nützlich it is expedient, es ist besser it is better, es liegt daran daß it is of consequence, referring to a future and uncertain event, are followed by the subjunctive mood. Ich wünsche, daß er bald geneset, I hope he may or will soon get better. Befehl, daß man den frechen Bösewicht ergreife, give orders to seize the audacious villain. We can also say ich befahl ihm zu schweigen, I ordered him to be silent, but not ich wünsche ihn zu schweigen; because we can in the former case omit zu schweigen without destroying the sense, but *I wish him*, standing alone, has not the same meaning. Es ist nöthig, daß man schweige or zu schweigen, it is necessary to be silent.

This class of verbs are frequently followed by auxiliaries of mood. Verbs of wishing and asking (and sometimes fearing) are followed by mögen, usually the imperfect subjunctive and verbs of commanding are followed by the imp. subj. of sollen. Ich wünsche or ich wünschte, daß er komme or daß er kommen möchte, I wish he may come. Er bat mich, daß ich ihn besuchen möchte, he begged me to visit him. Der König befahl, daß man eine Brücke baue or bauen sollte, the king gave orders that a bridge should be built. Der Arzt verordnete mir, ich sollte (seldom sollte) ein Bad nehmen, the physician ordered me to take a bath. Er fürchtet, seine Frau möchte sterben, he is afraid his wife may die.

The Infinitive.

The infinitive is a verbal substantive, and as such may be the subject or object of another verb; or it may depend upon a substantive or an adjective.

The infinitive without zu is used:

1. as the subject of a sentence: as, Geben ist seliger als nehmen, giving is more blessed than receiving. Sorgen macht Sorgen, he who goes a-borrowing goes a-sorrowing.

2. It is used after the auxiliary verbs of mood, and the following:

bleiben to remain,	helfen to help;	lernen to learn,
finden to find,	hören to hear,	machen to make,
fühlen to feel,	lassen to let,	nennen to call,
heißen to order, call,	lehren to teach,	sehen to see.

Ich lerne schreiben. Er lehrt uns singen. Ich hörte ihn sprechen. Ich fühle den Puls schlagen. Ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen. Er machte mich lachen. Das nenne ich schlafen. Laß ihn rufen let him call, or be called. In the perfect tenses, helfen, hören, heißen, sehen, and sometimes lehren and lernen, following an infinitive, are not put in the past participle but in the infinitive, like the verbs of mood. Ich habe sie singen hören, I have heard her sing. Wir haben Französisch sprechen lernen (or gelernt). Haben Sie das Buch liegen sehen? did you see the book lying?

3. The infinitive without zu is also used idiomatically with the following verbs: ich bleibe stehen, liegen u. s. w., I remain standing, lying &c., wir fahren or reiten spazieren we take a drive or a walk. Er geht betteln he goes begging; er hat gut reden it is an easy matter for him to speak. Er hat sich schlafen gelegt, he has laid himself down to sleep. Das Kind thut nichts als weinen, the child does nothing but cry.

The infinitive with zu is used:

1. as the subject of a sentence, when the verb has an object: as, Euch zu gefallen war mein höchster Wunsch to please you was my highest wish.

2. The infinitive with zu is used after substantives, adjectives and verbs. Die Hoffnung ihn zu sehen the hope of seeing him. Ich war froh ihn zu sehen, I was glad to see him. Ich fürchte ihn zu beleidigen I am afraid of offending him.

3. The infinitive with zu is used idiomatically after haben and sein. Ich habe nichts zu sagen, I have nothing to say. With sein it has a passive meaning. Es ist zu hoffen, it is to be hoped.

4. The infinitive with *zu* is also used after *ohne* without, *statt* or *anstatt* instead of, and *um* in order to, when the subject of both verbs is the same. *Er kam zurück, ohne etwas gesehen zu haben.* Man kann nicht leben, *ohne zu athmen*, one cannot live without breathing. *But sie trat ins Zimmer, ohne daß ihr Vater es bemerkte*, she entered the room without her father's perceiving it. *Anstatt zu arbeiten, gehen sie betteln* instead of working they go and beg. *But, er machte mir Vorwürfe, anstatt daß er mich hätte aufmuntern sollen* he reproached me, when he ought rather to have encouraged me. *Er ging auf die Universität, um die Wissenschaften zu studiren*, he went to the University to study the sciences.

Prepositions followed by the Gerund in English.

Ohne, *anstatt* and *um* are the only prepositions which can be used with *zu* before the infinitive. Other prepositions, which in English are followed by the *gerund in ing* (a sort of participial clause), must in German be combined with *da* in the principal sentence, while *daß* follows in dependent sentences. *Ich habe nichts dagegen, daß Sie nach Paris gehen*, I have no objection to your going to Paris. *Ich bestehe darauf, daß Sie mir das Geld bezahlen*, I insist on your paying me the money. *Ich wußte nichts davon, daß er krank war*, I knew nothing of his being ill. See Adverbial Sentences of Cause.

An Object before the Infinitive

is admissible when the verb admits the object in the same sense without the infinitive. We say in English: I wish him to do his duty: I believe him to be rich; I know him to be a good man &c.; but such verbs do not admit of this construction in German. We must say: *ich wünsche, daß er seine Pflicht thue*; *ich glaube, daß er reich ist*; *ich weiß, daß er ein guter Mann ist*. Some verbs, however, do admit of this construction; we can say: *ich befahl ihm zu gehen*, I ordered him to go; *ich rieth ihm zu schreiben*, I advised him to write; *er bat mich zu bleiben*, he requested me

to stay. We may easily know the one class from the other by leaving out the infinitive and considering whether the rest makes the proper sense. When, for instance, we say *I believe him to be rich*, if we leave out *to be rich*, we do not preserve the sense for we do not mean that *I believe him*. In this case, therefore, we cannot use an object before the infinitive in German. So, in the two other sentences, we do mean that we know him (personally), or that we wish him (wish for him). When, however, we say *I ordered him to go*, if we leave out *to go*, we preserve the sense, for I did order him, I did advise him, he did request me. Consequently these latter verbs admit of an object before the infinitive.

Both classes of verbs, however, admit of an infinitive with *zu*, when the subject is the same as that of the leading verb, even when the English does not admit of this construction. *Der Goldschmied behauptete, das Werk binnen drei Wochen vollenden zu können*, the goldsmith asserted that he could finish the work within three weeks. *Ich erinnere mich, das Gedicht gelesen zu haben*, I remember that I read the poem, I remember having read it. *Ich bereue es nun, ihn beleidigt zu haben*, I now regret that I offended him — having offended him.

Participles and Participial Clauses.

When the participle follows the noun of which it is an attribute, or when it is used adverbially, as an extension of the predicate, it is not inflected. *Sie ist lachend, weinend hinaus gegangen*, she went out laughing, weeping. *Er geht mit einem Dolche bewaffnet*, he goes armed with a dagger. *Dieses bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein*, thinking over this matter, I fell asleep.

The perfect participle of some verbs of motion follows *kommen*, where the English has the present participle. *Er kommt geritten, gelaufen, gefahren, geflogen &c.*, he comes riding, running &c. *Verloren gehen* means to get lost.

A Clause put absolutely is in the accusative case, habend being understood. Er stand, den Blick nach seinem Vaterland gerichtet, he stood (having) his looks turned to his native country, Die Hand am Schwerte, schauen sie sich drohend an (Sch.). Ausgenommen is construed in this way when it follows its noun: diesen Umstand ausgenommen, finde ich Alles recht, with the exception of this circumstance, I find all right. But when it precedes its noun, the latter agrees in case with the substantive from which it is excepted: es ist allen Brüdern angenehm, ausgenommen dem jüngsten, it is agreeable to all the brothers except the youngest.

Long participial Clauses are not often used in German. They are transformed into subordinate sentences either by means of the relative pronoun, or by the conjunctions da, weil, indem expressing cause or reason; and als, nachdem, indem, während, expressing time. Examples: I found a newspaper containing this information, ich fand eine Zeitung, welche diese Nachricht enthielt. After having finished my business, I shall take a walk nachdem ich meine Geschäfte beendigt habe, werde ich spazieren gehen. The pupil was punished for having been idle, der Schüler wurde bestraft, weil er träge gewesen war. While in London, I went to the Museum, als ich in London war, ging ich nach dem Museum. Showing a rare capacity for business, he was appointed Lord High Commissioner, da er eine seltene Tüchtigkeit in Geschäften zeigte, wurde er zum Königlichem Bevollmächtigten ernannt. Disguising himself in the habit of a peasant, Codrus proceeded to the camp of the enemy, Codrus ging in das feindliche Lager, indem er sich als Bauer verkleidete or Codrus verkleidete sich als Bauer und ging in das feindliche Lager. You must have perceived it, while speaking to him, Sie müssen es bemerkt haben, während Sie mit ihm sprachen.

The perfect participle is sometimes used for the imperative, es werde being understood: as Muth gefaßt! getroßt! courage! cheer up! Aufgestanden! get up! Nicht geplaudert! no talking! Here the English uses the pres. part. for the imperative.

Summary of Remarks on the Conjunctions and Complex Sentences.

The words in the regular order remain after *und, aber, oder, denn, sondern, allein*.

Subordinate sentences — those which depend — throw the principal verb in their clause to the end.

1. An adjective sentence has *who, which* or *whom*, or *that*, which may often be put in their room.
2. A substantive sentence may stand in the place of the nominative or the accusative case; it is joined to the principal sentence by *that*, or some interrogative: *who, why* or *what*.
3. Conjunctions of time, place, or manner, or cause introduce what is called an adverbial clause.

Co-ordinative Conjunctions.

Über limits or restricts;
allein, however, contradicts
what one has said or might conceive,
like *sondern* after negative:
*er kam nicht einmal, sondern häufig*¹;
*er spricht Französisch, aber nicht geläufig*².

With *weder* — *noch, entweder, auch* put first
kaum, nur, sogar, the order is reversed,
if these refer to what we would assert;
but if to subject, then they don't invert:
*Kaum war das Parlament vertagt*³,
but *auch mein Bruder hat es mir gesagt*⁴.

Doch, wahrlich, nun, indessen all the while,
and *freilich, in der That, im Gegentheil*
will leave the order of the words the same,
when used to change the topic, or exclaim:

1. He came not only once, but often; 2. he speaks French but not fluently; 3. scarcely was the parliament prorogued; 4. my brother also told me so.

as, nun, ich glaub' es; doch, sie müssen fragen¹,
im Gegentheil, er hatte nichts zu sagen².

Adverbial Sentences expressing Place.

With wo, wohin, woher or where
come often da, dahin, daher:
ich folge, wo ich Lichter sehe³;
er kommt daher, wohin ich gehe⁴.

Adverbial Sentences expressing Time.

Als, Da, Wenn, Wann.

Als, da mean *when* with past event,
if some particular time is meant.

If one can say instead of *when* —

“as often as”, “as soon” — use wenn:

Thus, wenn er ging whene'er he went
but, als er ging is one event.

Use wenn with present, future tense,
for *when* has here a general sense.

As interrogative, say wann.

Correlative of both is dann:

dann ist es an der Zeit zu weinen
wenn Unglücksfälle uns erscheinen⁵.

Wann geht der Zug ab? when's the train?

ich kann nicht sagen, wann wir gehen⁶.

Während, Indes, Indem.

When, while, is während or indes;

indem marks simultaneousness,

for which our participle stands:

“my friend departed, shaking hands”⁷.

1. Now, I believe it; however, you must ask; 2. on the contrary, he had nothing to say; 3. I follow where I see lights; 4. he comes from the place, where I am going; 5. it is time enough to weep, when misfortunes appear; 6. I cannot say when we go; 7. mein Freund, indem er mir die Hand drückte, reiste ab.

Ehe, Nachdem, Bis, Seit or Seitdem.

Before is *ehe* — sooner than or ere:
ich würde lieber sterben, eh' ich wäre¹.
Till bis; and *after, when, nachdem,*
since seit or seitdem or seitdem.

Adverbial Clauses expressing Cause, Manner, Proportion.

Da, Weil.

Da *since* in general — why we act or know;
but weil, *because*, explains why things are so;
as, da der Schnee schmilzt, muß es thauen²;
weil ich ihn kenne, kann ich trauen³.

So and Wie.

So — als means to the same degree;
in such a manner wie, als wie:
er spricht wie ein gelehrter Mann —
so gut or besser als ich kann⁴.
When clauses are reversed, we say:
so schnell er läuft, so schnell ich geh'⁵.

Damit. Daß, so — daß, zu — daß.

Damit or daß *that* — *with the view,*
so — daß *so that* or *so as to,*
zu — daß must have subjunctive mood:
too old to learn or *that he should.*

Als wenn, als ob.

With present, past subjunctive, go
als wenn, als ob, *as if, as though;*
or dropping wenn: er sieht aus als
sei ihm der Strick schon um den Hals⁶.

1. I would die, sooner than I should be . . . ; 2. as the snow is melting, it must be thawing; 3. I can trust him because I know him (or da ich ihn kenne); 4. He speaks like a learned man — as well as or better than I can; 5. I go as fast as he runs; 6. he looks as if the rope were already round his neck.

Je — desto.

Je — desto *in a like degree*
express proportion — English *the*:

Je mehr der arme Geizhals hat,
je (desto) minder wird er satt¹.

Sobald ... als, so oft ... als &c.

Sobald als or sobald *as soon*;
so oft — so oft als — Sie es thun²,
so lange, in so fern, so weit³,
without or with the als are right.

Condition.

A condition expressed or perhaps understood
makes the principal sentence conditional mood.

The imperfect, pluperfect, subjunctive may go,
instead of conditional — often with so:

as, wäre ich hungrig, so würde ich essen (cond.)⁴

wenn ich Brod gehabt hätte, so wär' es gegessen (subj.).⁵

Wenn *if* with subjunctive supposes a case,
which does not exist, or which never took place.

The indicative's used in a possible sense,
or sollte along with a definite tense:

Wenn er ankommen sollte, so werden wir gehen⁶;

wenn es regnet or sollte es, should there be rain.

Without wenn, the form is a question, command:

as, gibst du den (gieb einen) Finger, so will er die Hand⁷.

Außer wenn is *except*, and wenn nicht is *unless*,

which the form es sei denn daß, though old, may express⁸.

1. The more the poor miser has, the less he is satisfied; 2. as often as you do it; 3. so long, so far; 4. if I were hungry, I should eat; 5. if I had had bread, it would have been eaten; 6. if he should arrive, we shall go; 7. if you give a finger, he will have the (whole) hand; 8. es sei denn daß *Somebody* von oben her geboren werde, so kann er das Reich Gottes nicht sehen.

Concessive Sentence.

Wenn — gleich, schon or auch — with correlative so,
ob — gleich, schon or wohl — are concessive, *although*;
or without wenn: as, wäre er auch though he were.
Auch *ever* may follow the relative wer:
wer, er auch sei or sein mag, whoever be be
however so sehr wir auch streben — or wie¹.

The Noun Sentence. Indirect Speech.

In an indirect speech in subjunctive, you may
use the tense which the person directly did say;
and especially in third person singular you should
use the present, which here will distinguish the mood.
The indicative's used when there's no room for doubt;
and the verb keeps its place, when the daß is left out:
sie sagten sie hätten — er habe gespeist²;
du behauptetest mir daß du könntest, du seiest³.
With *fear*, *hope* or *think*, the subjunctive must go
with a past time⁴, but not after *certain* or *know*.

The subjunctive comes after *to wish* or *desire*,
to permit, *to advise*, *to command*, or *require*,
to be needful or *proper* that something be done;
for the thing is a future and uncertain one.

With *hitten* and *rathen* we also may say
daß er möchte — imperfect subjunctive — for *may*.
Man befiehlt, daß er geh', daß er sollte *he should*⁵.
When the person's the same, use infinitive mood.

The Infinitive.

The infinitive speaks of an act as a thing —
the doing of it, like our gerund in ing.

1. However much we strive; 2. they said that they had dined,
that he had dined; 3. you asserted that you could, that you
were; 4. but, when the time is present or future, the indica-
tive or subjunctive may be used; 5. one gives orders that he
should.

Das Gehen the going, der Gang is the walk;
das Sprechen the speaking, die Sprache the talk.
Ich bin müde des Laufens, vom laufen — spazieren
viel Lesen macht Kopfwahl, viel Geld zu verlieren.
Statt, anstatt, and ohne and um with the view,
when the person's the same, take the supine with zu:
er kam, ohne etwas gesehen zu haben¹;
dieser Tagelöhner plaudert, statt, anstatt, zu graben²;
but otherwise daß: ohne daß man ihn sah
so all prepositions combining with da:
a man does not perish by fasting a while
man stirbt nicht davon, daß . . . or deswegen weil . . .

The Infinitive with and without zu.

With verbs we have zu: as, entschlossen zu gehen³
with substantives: as, das Vergnügen zu sehen⁴
with adjectives: leicht oder schwer zu verstehen⁵.

Auxiliaries either of tense or of mood,
and the following verbs have the zu understood⁶:
ich lerne gehorchen; ich lehre ihn lesen⁷;
ich höre ihn singen; er hilft mir genesen;
ich finde es liegen; ich sehe ihn stehen⁸;
ich mache ihn lachen; ich heiße ihn gehen;
ich lasse es kommen; ich fühl' es sich rühren⁹;
ich bleibe hier sitzen; ich gehe spazieren¹⁰;
er thut nichts als weinen does nothing but weep;
er legte sich schlafen he lay down to sleep.

The Infinitive after an Object.

With bitten and rathen, befehlen, command,
the infinitive after an object may stand;
but after to *wish, think, assert* or to *know*,
the infinitive only — no object — can go.

1. He came without seeing anything; 2. this labourer talks instead of working; 3. determined to go; 4. the pleasure of seeing; 5. easy or difficult to be understood; 6. I learn to obey, I teach him to read; 7. I make him laugh, I bid him go; 8. I hear him singing; he helps me to recover; I find it lying; I see him standing; 9. I make him laugh; I bid him go; I send for it, I feel it moving; 10. I remain sitting here, I go for a walk.

We think him to be cannot so be expressed,
for we do not *think him*, when we leave out the rest:
ich befehle ihm, rathe ihm, bitt' ihn zu gehen¹;
he asserts that he sees, er behauptet zu sehen.

Participles.

Participial forms must be treated the same
as the adjective, if they precede any name;
but not, if they follow or come as a clause
explaining adverbially circumstance, cause:
ein liebender Sohn, mit verbotenen Waaren²;
sie entfernten sich schweigend, sie kamen gefahren³.

The present with *zu* like the Latin in *du*
shows what must be done or be suffered by us:
the hat to be dyed, der zu färbende Hut;
the rage to be feared, die zu fürchtende Wuth.

Long clauses are turned by *indem* when or while,
by the relative *welcher*, *nachdem*, *da* or *weil*.

Supplementary Chapters on Construction.

Chap I. On the Use of the Article.

1. The article's used, when the noun is defined
as one that we know, or the whole of the kind;
der Mensch is the species *mankind* or *man*,
the tyrant — some special one — der Tyrann.
2. When the noun's not inflected, to show what the case is,
the article's used: as, die Schätze des Crösus⁴.
3. None goes with particular persons and towns,
except when an adjective's joined to the nouns:
die kleine Mathilde, das schöne Lyon⁵,
der heilige Paulus, Johannes — Saint John.
4. All feminine places — die Schweiz, die Türkei,
the rivers — der Rhein, and the months, as der Mai,

1. I order him, advise him, ask him to go; 2. a loving son,
with prohibited goods; 3. they withdrew in silence; 4. the
treasures of Cræsus; 5. little Mathilda, beautiful Lyons.

the meals, and the seasons and days of the week, and the sciences have it: der Herbst, die Physik¹.

Omission of the Article.

5. With nouns undetermined no articles come, the singular mostly drops *any* or *some*:
as, essen Sie Brod? are you eating some bread?
but einige plural is commonly said.
6. A noun with a genitive going before has no article joined: as, des Beichtvaters Ohr².
7. The *office* or *trade* that describes any man, and the *titles of books* drop the article *an*:
as, Handbuch der deutschen Geschichte³ — not ein —
er soll Advocat oder Geistlicher sein⁴.

The Article with Abstract Nouns and Plurals expressing a whole Class.

8. Nouns abstract have generally *der*, *die* or *das*, so have plurals expressing the whole of a class, except when restricted, combined, or unless they are first, as in proverbs, with special stress⁵:
die Vernunft unterscheidet die Menschen von Thieren⁶;
das Wasser ist flüßig⁷; er haßt das Studiren⁸;
but say Schönheit und Jugend for *beauty and youth*,
and Zeit gebiert Wahrheit time brings out the truth.
9. With a genitive following a noun, it's in use, or a compound is formed; as, der Lebensgenuß⁹.

1. Autumn, physics; 2. the confessor's ear; 3. a manual of German History; 4. he is said to be a lawyer or a clergyman.

5. When these nouns are restricted, that is, not used in their widest sense, when several are combined together, and when they are first in the sentence, and emphatic, they may or may not have the article: Kinder or die Kinder müssen nicht immer ihren Willen haben, children ought not always to have their own way. But if any other member has more emphasis and is put first, the article is expressing: ihren Willen müssen die Kinder nicht immer haben (Wittich).

6. Reason distinguishes man from beasts; 7. water is fluid; 8. he hates study; 9. the enjoyment of life.

10. Prepositions combine, or leave article out:
aus Mangel an Geld¹, but im Zweifel in doubt,
beim Spiel or at play; in Verzweiflung despair
zum Beispiel for instance; mit Sorgfalt with care.

Chap II. On the Use of the Cases. Government.

1. The Genitive of the Possessor and the Genitive of the Object.

The possessor may follow the noun, or be first;
but a genitive object is never reversed:

die Macht eines Königs, des Königes Macht²;

but you cannot reverse, die Beschreibung der Schlacht³.

We have often in place of the genitive von,
and derivatives go as their verbs would have gone:
as, die Furcht vor Gefahr⁴; and, to show what you mean,
say die Liebe zu einem, der Haß gegen ihn⁵.

2. The Partitive Genitive.

A partitive governs the genitive case,
or takes von, unter, aus, which must come in its place
with pronouns: as, jeder von Ihnen of you,
die Meisten von uns⁶, and with numerals too.

When the quantity's named before substance or kind,
it neither takes genitive, nor is declined;
but is joined to the substance, as if it agreed,
unless some determining word should precede:
sie tranken ein Glas Wein, ein Glas dieses Weins⁷;
but the plural is given of the weak feminines:
as, zwanzig Pfund Fleisch, aber zehn Ellen Tuch⁸;
so with Art, Stück, and Haufe, and Menge, and Buch⁹.

1. For want of money; 2. the king's power; 3. the description of the battle; 4. the fear of danger; 5. love to one, hatred of or against one; 6. most of us; 7. they drank a glass of wine, of this wine; 8. twenty pounds of meat, but ten ells of cloth. 9. Art sort, Stück piece, Haufe or Haufen heap, Menge number, mass, Buch quire are construed in the same way: as, viele Arten Thiere many kinds of beasts, ein Stück Holz a piece of wood, ein Haufen Geld a great deal of money, eine Menge Menschen a great many men, ein Buch Papier a quire of paper.

2. The Genitive of Quality or Dimension.

The dimension, material, dignity, place,
of which something is, may be genitive case,
if described by an adjective — not if alone;
but in either case such may be rendered by von:
ein Mann hohen Ranges¹; Johannes von Ghent;
von niedriger Herkunft of humble descent.
When a numeral follows, von always is found:
ein Gewicht von sechs Pfund, or a weight of six pound.

4. The Genitive governed by Adjectives.

With a genitive object, we commonly find
capacity, fulness, affection of mind:
eines eingedenk mindful; suspicious 'verdächtig;
dessen fähig or capable; master of mächtig;
bewußt², dessen würdig or worthy of it;
voll Weins or von Wein³, so with los rid or quit;
einer Sache gewiß, kundig, sicher assured.
Ich bin **das** oder **dessen** gewohnt or inured;
gewahr⁴, überdrüssig⁵ und müde, und satt;
der Sache froh glad *of*, darüber glad *at*;
the genitive signifies guilt or desert,
the accusative value, with schuldig⁶ and werth⁷.

5. The Dative governed by Adjectives.

Advantage and likeness, and converse of them,
take the dative: er ist Ihnen ähnlich, bequem⁸;
mir gehorsam und lieb, or obedient and dear;
so, attachment, proximity: nahe or near,
related to einem — mit einem — verwandt;
überlegen superior; known to bekannt.

Use gegen with some dispositions of mind,
with nachsichtig⁹, grausam¹⁰ and freundlich or kind.

1. A man of high rank, better von hohem Range; 2. conscious of; 3. full of wine; 4. aware; 5. tired, sick, weary of; 6. schuldig with acc. *indebted for*, with gen. *guilty*; 7. werth with acc. *worth*, with gen. *worthy of*; 8. he is like, convenient, to you; 9. indulgent; 10. cruel.

6. The Genitive and Accusative in Adverbial Clauses.

As an adverb of manner, affection of mind,
the genitive's used, and with time undefined;
if the time is determined, when something took place,
by an adjective joined, 'tis accusative case:
ich ruhte des Abends, natürlicher Weise¹;
but kommenden Tag will ich gehen auf die Reise².

Duration, and *measure* and *value* are put
in accusative case, so a clause absolute:
nur einen Fuß breit, or a single foot wide,
die Hand auf den Degen³ — with *habend* supplied.

The Government of Verbs.

7. Accusative after Verbs.

A transitive verb takes accusative case,
and a neuter like *run* takes an object like *race*⁴.

8. The Dative after Verbs.

These verbs take the dative: mir nahen draw near,
mir scheinen, and others which mean to *appear*,
begegnen to meet, and geschehen betide,
einem glauben⁵, ihm trauen, vertrauen confide,
einem folgen to follow, be like einem gleichen,
man fröhnt einem Laster⁶, to yield einem weichen,
einem schmeicheln to flatter, gehorchen obey,
and verbs with entgegen to go *in one's way*
einem dienen, succumb unterliegen, erliegen,
einem danken to thank, to suffice is genügen
einem huldigen⁷, willfahren humour, comply,
einem drohen to threaten, ihm trotzen defy,
einem zürnen be angry, ihm böse zu sein,
einem rathen advise, einem winken to sign,

1. I took repose in the evening, naturally; 2. next day I will go on my journey; 3. with his hand on his sword; 4. the object is cognate or similar in sense: as, man läuft seinen Weg one goes one's way; 5. believe; 6. indulges a vice; 7. do homage to.

einem nutzen, ihm helfen, ihm frommen avail,
 and verbs like es mangelt and fehlen to fail,
 einem fluchen to curse, einem schaden to wrong,
 gebühren be due to, gehören belong,
 einem anstehen suit, ihm gefallen to please
 es beliebt mir I choose, es bekommt it agrees,
 bear a grudge einem grossen, es nachtragen spite,
 es glückt mir, gelingt mir; I thrive es gedeiht,
 es schmeckt mir I like, es geziemt mir beseems,
 I forbode is mir ahnet, ihm träumet he dreams,
 mir schaudert I shudder, es bangt mir I fear,
 es kostet mir viel oder mich, costs me dear,
 es schwindelt mir means I am dizzy in head,
 mir efelt I loathe, and mir grauet I dread.

The compounds of vor, nach, bei, wider, zu, ent,
 take the dative: as, vorbeugen meaning prevent,
 einem zuhören listen to, beistehen assist
 entlaufen escape, widerstehen resist.

9. The Accusative with the Dative.

The accusative and dative with *give* and *declare*;
 ich vergleiche mich ihm or mit ihm, *I compare*;
take away — mir, von mir etwas nehmen or stehlen;
conceal — mir, or vor mir, verbergen, verhehlen;
 er maßt sich (dat.) es an claims a thing not his own,
 so verzeihen to pardon, vergeben condone,
 einem etwas verübeln to take it amiss;
 es verdanken, verübeln to blame one for this;
 einem einwenden, einwerfen etwas object;
 ihm verbieten forbid, ihm verwehren to check;
 ihm befehlen, erlauben, gestatten permit;
 einem nachahmen copy, ihm anpassen fit;
 einem mißgönnen grudge, ihm verweigern deny,
 einem antworten answer, erwiedern reply.

10. Dative in Phrases.

A dative of profit or loss takes the place of the pronoun possessive or genitive case:
Er steht mir zur Seite he stands by my side;
it occurs too in phrases: es thut einem leid;
he begins to lose heart, es vergeht ihm der Muth;
es fällt einem leicht¹ und es geht einem gut².
Es ist mir zu Muth — disposed well or ill;
es wird einem kalt one gets cold, gets a chill;
it falls to my share is es wird mir zu Theil;
es gereicht ihm zur Ehre³, so weh dir! or Heil!⁴

11. The Genitive after Verbs.

Sich schämen⁵, sich freuen⁶ and spotten⁷ and lachen⁸
take the genitive eines or über die Sachen,
sich erinnern⁹, gedenken — an einen or eines¹⁰,
wir harren¹¹ or warten¹² auf Niemand or keines,
ich achte auf etwas or eines take heed,
die Kranken bedürfen des Arztes they need,
sich dessen getrösten¹³, sich weigern refuse,
sich befehlen apply, sich bedienen to use,
sich bemeistern to learn, sich bemächtigen seize,
ich pflege der Ruhe I live at my ease,
sich annehmen — eines, take interest, care,
sich enthalten¹⁴ and sich unterfangen to dare,
sich rühmen to boast, sich begeben resign,
der Meinung¹⁵, der Absicht¹⁶, des Willens¹⁷ zu sein,
mich jammert des Volkes¹⁸, mich erbarmet der Kranken¹⁹,
entschlagen Sie Sich dieser trüben Gedanken²⁰.

1. One finds it easy; 2. one is getting on well; 3. it turns out to his credit; 4. woe to thee! Heil dem Könige! long live the king; 5. to be ashamed of; 6. to rejoice at; 7. to mock at; 8. to laugh at; 9. to remember; 10. to think of; 11. to tarry for; 12. to wait for; 13. to expect confidently, be confident of; 14. abstain from; 15. to be of the opinion; 16. to have the intention; 17. to be of a mind, have the will to; 18. I have compassion on the people; 19. I pity the sick; 20. banish these gloomy thoughts.

The accusative's more common with brauchen¹, begehren²; with verfehlen miss mark, miss the good of entbehren; with genießen enjoy, and with schonen to spare, with vergessen forget, and with pflegen take care.

12. The Accusative with the Genitive.

Most verbs with accusative and genitive mean to free or to rid of: entwöhnen to wean; entlasten, entladen unload as a ship; erleichtern ease of; entfleiden to strip; entlassen dismiss; and entsetzen remove; entheben exempt one from things that behove; berauben to rob of; entblößen to bare; überheben Sie mich dieser Mühe, to spare³; erlassen release from (with dative remit); des Landes verweisen to banish from it.

Beschuldigen, anklagen, zeihen accuse;
eines bessern belehren set right, disabuse;
he favoured, er würdigte mich eines Blickes⁴,
versichert assures, überführt he convicts.

Chap. III. On the Use of Prepositions with the Objects of Verbs.

1. An with the Dative.

An follows with dative *abundance, excess, deficiency, likeness, delight and distress*:
man geht an mir vorbei⁵, nimmt an Kräften zu⁶,
übertrifft mich an Fleiß to excel or outdo,
überlegen an⁷, fruchtbar an, arm an and leer⁸,
man nagt an der Feder⁹, beschädigt an Ehr'¹⁰,
wir weichen an, stehen an Kenntnissen nach¹¹,
er ist stark an Verstand, doch an Körper sehr schwach¹²,

1. To use, to want; 2. to desire, to covet; 3. spare me this trouble; 4. he favoured me with, or condescended to give me a look; 5. one goes past me (also with vorüber); 6. increases in strength; 7. superior; 8. fruitful, poor, empty; 9. one nibbles at the pen; 10. damages or touches one's honour; 11. we yield to, are inferior in knowledge; 12. he is strong in intelligence but very weak in body.

es mangelt an, fehlt an, gebricht an, it fails;
er leidet, ist krank an dem Fieber he ails¹;
ist blind, lahm, verwundet am Kopf' in the head²,
ist an seinen Wunden gestorben or dead³;
er rächt sich an⁴, sättigt sich an einer Speise⁵;
verhindert or hindert mich an meiner Reise⁶;
wir finden Vergnügen⁷, ergötzen uns — an⁸;
wir haben Gefallen, Lust, Freude — daran⁹,
einen Antheil or Theil an der Erbschaft a share¹⁰;
wir zweifeln an doubt of, verzweifeln despair;
ein Beispiel, Exempel an Jemandem nehmen¹¹;
ich tadle nichts an, I have nothing to blame in
an Größe, Gestalt ist man ähnlich or gleich¹²
but von Farbe, von Aussehen angenehm, bleich¹³.

An followed by the Accusative.

Man erinnert or mahnt an die Pflicht, to remind
man kehrt sich an cares for, man denkt an den Freund,
man denkt auf or über, one meditates on,
but denken to have an opinion of von;
man klopf an die Thür und man glaubt an's Geipenst¹⁴,
es reicht an, er stößt an — to reach, run against.

2. Auf with the Dative.

Bestehen¹⁵, beruhen auf rest on a base,
take the dative; the rest take accusative case.
Man besteht auf Bezahlung on payment of due;
es beruht nur auf Ihnen depends upon you.

1. He suffers from, is ill of the fever; 2. blind, lame or wounded in the head; 3. dead of his wounds; 4. he revenges himself on; 5. he feasts himself on a dish (also mit); 6. he prevents or hinders me from my journey; 7. we find pleasure; 8. we delight ourselves in; 9. we have pleasure or joy in; 10. a share in the inheritance. (Wir nehmen einen Antheil an, we take an interest in); 11. to take an example by any one; 12. one is similar or equal in size in figure; 13. one is agreeable, pale in colour or appearance; 14. one knocks at the door, and one believes in the gost; 15. insist on.

Auf with the Accusative.

One points to: man weist mit dem Finger auf ihn;
we allude to: wir spielen auf ihn an, bezieh'n;
but weisen, verweisen take an *to direct*;
in Beziehung, in Rücksicht auf Sie *in respect*.
Ich berufe mich auf I refer or appeal.
Man schießt auf die Scheibe or nach einem Ziel¹
man zielt nach or auf means to *hint at* or *aim*.
Appetit auf², and Einfluß auf³, Anspruch a claim;
man achtet, giebt Acht auf, man merkt auf attends,
die Krone — das Gut erbt auf ihn it descends.
Ich laure auf, lausche auf⁴, horche auf, höre auf⁵.
I direct to ich richte das Auge, Gewehr auf⁶;
man verzichtet auf, leistet Verzicht auf renounces;
geht — stürmt auf ihn los oder stürzt auf ihn pounces.

Ich antworte auf einen Brief I reply;
verlasse mich, stütze mich auf I rely;
ich fuße auf, baue, vertraue, confide;
bin stolz, poche, bilde mir ein — auf, I pride;
ich hoffe auf, rechne auf, zähle auf count;
das beläuft auf⁷ — ich schätze auf⁸ — any amount.

Wir schimpfen auf, schelten auf, schmäh'en inveigh,
and schmäl'en auf rail at, when one is away;
but *chide one* at hand, with accusative case;
einen Schurken ihn schimpfen to treat to his face⁹.
We say Eifersucht¹⁰, Argwohn¹¹, and lästern traduce
auf einen; but über with things is in use.
Man zürnt mir, auf mich, and darüber¹² at it,
but zürnen, zerfallen *fall out with* take mit.

1. One shoots at the target, at a mark; 2. appetite for; 3. influence with; 4. lie in wait; 5. to hearken or listen to; 6. I direct the eye, the musket to; 7. that amounts to; 8. I value at; 9. treat one as a rascal to his face; 10. jealousy; 11. suspicion; 12. one is angry with. So einem or über einen böse sein.

3. Für.

Für *for or in place, in behalf, for the sake*;
man nimmt es für Scherz¹ meaning *take or mistake*;
ich weiß es für wahr², bin bekannt für or *known*;
ich bekenne mich für einen Christen I own;
man erkennt es für unbillig³, *judge, recognise*,
zum Böfewicht stempeln *to stamp, stigmatise*.
I reckon ich halte es für eine Ehre
I give out ich gebe mich aus für — erkläre.

Zu, Für see 12.

Zu means *for some purpose*: zum Essen bereiten⁴,
wenig Hang zum Studiren⁵, viel Trieb zum Arbeiten⁶,
Gefühl oder Neigung für eine Person⁷,
but zu einer Sache⁸; geneigt zu *is prone*;
man bestimmt es dazu, but für Sie⁹ or for you;
Sinn für¹⁰, Interesse für¹¹; Lust, Liebe zu¹².

4. Für, Als.

Man stellt dar und kennt als, betrachtet als *deems*;
erscheint als, but scheint ein Gelehrter one seems;
ich sehe ihn als meinen Wohlthäter an¹³,
but ansehen — für einen andern Mann¹⁴.

5. In.

The object with in and accusative goes
after *move into, change to, divide, decompose*:
man verwandelt in Geld¹⁵, oder setzt in den Stand¹⁶;
ich gerathe in Armuth¹⁷, ich setze in Brand¹⁸;

1. One takes it as a joke; 2. I know it to be true; 3. one judges it to be unreasonable; 4. to prepare something for a meal; 5. little inclination to study; 6. great impulse to work; 7. feeling or liking for a person; 8. inclination for a thing; 9. one intends it for that, for you; 10. taste for; 11. interest for; 12. liking, love for; 13. I regard him as my benefactor; 14. to take one for another man; 15. one converts into money; 16. puts in the condition; 17. I fall into poverty; 18. I set on fire.

sich einlassen in is *to enter upon*;
 in einen verliebt¹ or vernarrt doating on;
 we consent to wir willigen in etwas ein;
 ergeben uns in Gottes Willen resign;
 one accommodates fügt sich, or schickt sich darin;
 one complies with request man willfahrt einem in.

6. Mit.

Man spricht² und hat Mitleid mit ihm — sympathise;
 wir kommen damit überein — harmonise,
 sich beschäftigen, abgeben mit³, sich befassen⁴,
 we deal in wir handeln mit, joke with wir spaßen,
 thun groß⁵, treiben Spott⁶, kämpfen mit we contend,
 sind bekannt mit⁷, sind fertig mit⁸, endigen end,
 wir fangen damit or dabei an⁹ with it;
 farg¹⁰, sparsam¹¹, zufrieden¹², verschwenderisch mit¹³.
 Wir haben zu thun mit¹⁴, vereinen unite;
 sich verheirathen mit¹⁵, sich vergnügen delight.

7. Nach.

Mich verlangt, ich verlange nach Reichthum¹⁶ desire,
 wir graben nach dig for, wir forschen enquire,
 wir haschen nach catch at, wir greifen nach grasp,
 wir schnappen nach Luft oder Athem¹⁷ we gasp;
 wir hungern und dursten nach¹⁸, streben nach Ehren¹⁹,
 sind gierig nach etwas — but etwas begehren²⁰
 to long for sich sehnen nach, pine for is schmachten;
 to send for is schicken nach, aim at is trachten;

1. In love with one; 2. one speaks to me, with me; 3. to occupy or busy one's self with; 4. man befaßt sich mit einem Geschäft nicht (engage or embark in a business) when one considers it too troublesome or dangerous; man giebt sich nicht mit einem oder mit etwas ab (has nothing to do with) when it is beneath one's notice (Eberhard); 5. to boast or brag of a thing; 6. turn into ridicule; 7. are acquainted with; 8. are ready with; 9. we begin with; 10. stingy or niggardly; 11. saving or frugal; 12. contented with; 13. extravagant with; 14. we have to do with; 15. marry with; 16. we desire riches; 17. gasp for air or breath; 18. we hunger and thirst for; 19. we strive for honours; 20. eager for, greedy of. Begehren *covet, desire* takes the simple acc.

man sieht sich darnach um looks out for the thing,
wir sehen nach look after, werfen nach fling,
wir fragen um Rath, nach dem Wege¹ we ask;
es schmeckt nach dem Fasse it tastes of the cask.

8. Ueber.

The feelings take über: as, froh über glad,
empfindlich or stung by, and traurig or sad,
wir ängstigen², wehklagen über lament;
Kummer, Reue empfinden — to sorrow, repent;
empört über shocked at, bekümmert or pained,
ich beschwerte mich, klagte darüber complained;
sich entrüsten³, sich ärgern⁴, betrübt über vexed;
ich bin über die Frage betreten perplexed;
Verdruß über, Unmuth und Aerger chagrin
Zorn⁵, Unwille⁶ über, or auf, gegen ihn.
To grumble at murren, darüber sich grämen⁷,
darüber erröthen to blush at or schämen;
darüber verwundert, erstaunt⁸, und bewegt⁹,
sich berathschlagen¹⁰, nachdenken, sinnen reflect,
and urtheilen¹¹ über, entscheiden decide,
sich aufhalten, machen sich lustig¹² deride,
darüber gebieten and herrschen and walten¹³,
but *to do as one likes with* is mit etwas schalten,
über eigenes Vermögen verfügen¹⁴, dispose;
man siegt über Feinde one conquers one's foes.

9. Um.

After begging and striving, um signifies for,
as with betteln to beg for, and flehen implore,
man ersucht mich um etwas¹⁵; so, anhalten sue;
ich bitte um Gnade¹⁶, bewerbe mich woo.

1. We ask for advice, ask the way; 2. to alarm, to distress;
3. to grow angry at; 4. be offended at; 5. anger; 6. indignation;
7. grieve at; 8. astonished; 9. moved; 10. deliberate; 11. judge
or decide; 12. *lit.* to make one's self merry at; 13. to rule over;
14. to dispose of one's own property; 15. one desires something
of me; 16. I ask for grace or mercy.

Um marks out the stake or the object of strife:
 as, um's Leben thu' ich es nicht¹ for my life;
 man spielt um one plays for, man würfelt with dice;
 man s'cht um, man schlägt sich, man kämpft um den Preis².
 Wir rechnen um, zanken um, hadern dispute;
 ein Rechtsstreit, Proceß um die Erbschaft a suit³.
 Wir streben um what we are anxious to gain,
 wir streben für what we desire to retain.

Um follows with sein, kommen, bringen to bring,
 meaning *loss*, and with *sorrow for* loss of a thing:
 er kommt um sein Geld⁴, bringt mich um meinen Lohn⁵,
 ich klage um einen verstorbenen Sohn⁶.
 Es ist um ihn gethan or geschehen — ist um ihn⁷;
 sich bekümmern um care for, *take pains* sich bemühen⁸.
 Er weint bei dem Anblick, vor Freude for joy,
 über ihn⁹, um das Spielzeug for loss of the toy.
 Sich um Jemand verdient machen¹⁰, um ihn verdienen¹¹;
 wie steht es um Sie but wie geht es mit Ihnen¹²?

10. Von.

Man hört, spricht und weiß von der Sache¹³ of it
 man spricht vom Verbrechen frei, los to acquit¹⁴
 and von for the genitive also may come
 with verbs meaning *free from* or *separate from*;
 wir fordern von¹⁵, nehmen von¹⁶, heilen von cure¹⁷,
 unterrichten von¹⁸, sind überzeugt von or sure.
 Von Neußern angenehm, häßlich or zart¹⁹:
 er ist schön von Figur²⁰ or some bodily part.

1. I would not do it for my life; 2. one contends for the prize; 3. for the inheritance; 4. he loses his money; 5. he causes me the loss of my wages, makes me lose my wages; 6. I lament the loss of a deceased son; 7. it is all over with you; 8. to care for, trouble about; 9. he weeps at the sight, over him (über einen Vorfall, über Jemandes Tod weinen); 10. to deserve well of any one; 11. to deserve at one's hands; 12. how are you getting on? how goes it with you? 13. one hears, speaks and knows of the thing; 14. one acquits of the crime; 15. we require from; 16. we take from; 17. we cure of; 18. inform of; 19. agreeable, hateful or delicate in exteriors (external appearance); 20. beautiful in form.

11. Vor.

Vor follows aversion, and horror, alarm:
Furcht für for the welfare, Furcht vor for some harm;
man schützt vor or gegen¹; vor Kälte bewahren²;
keep from dangers is hüte dich vor den Gefahren;
mir efelt, mir grauet vor etwas abhor
wir erschrecken, entsetzen uns über or vor³.

12. Zu.

The factitive object has commonly zu
with verbs of becoming, converting anew
das Wasser wird Eis or zu Eis — turns to ice
and so after *challenge, compulsion, advice*.
Zum Könige erwählen⁴, ernennen to name,
zum Könige ausrufen⁵, that is, proclaim,
to serve for is dienen zu, machen zu make⁶,
wir weihen zu⁷, nehmen zum Muster we take⁸,
bestimmen⁹, verdammen¹⁰, verurtheilen doom¹¹ —
zu with plurals, with singulars zur oder zum.

Chap. IV. Use of Prepositions in Adverbial Phrases.

1. Rest in a Place.

Zu, Innerhalb, Zu.

Zu in: as, in Frankreich, in town in der Stadt;
when we name any city zu signifies *at*:
in der Kirche at church, but zu Rom or at Rome
innerhalb eines Hauses, zu Hause at home
Er liegt mir zu Füßen¹², zu Bett or in bed
zur Rechten, zur Linken, zur Seite¹³ are said.

1. Protect from; 2. preserve from cold; 3. we are frightened at; 4. elect, choose as emperor; 5. proclaim as king; 6. einen zum Grafen machen to make one earl; zum Sklaven, zu einem Königreiche machen &c.; 7. er wurde zum Bischof geweiht ordained, consecrated as a bishop; 8. to take as an as a pattern; 9. destine, intend for; 10. condemn; 11. doom, sentence; 12. he lies at my feet; 13. on the right, on the left, at the side.

Auf, An.

Auf means on the top of, but an on the flank:
Wir gehen am Flusse hin oder entlang¹
das Schloß an der Thür on the side of the door;
an der Stelle, am Orte², am Lande on shore.

An, Bei, Neben.

An *close on* what bounds: at the wall an der Wand,
against which we lean, or along which we stand;
bei near, or engaged at: bei Koblenz am Rhein;
ich bin bei der Arbeit³, bei Tische I dine.
We say neben *beside* something similar in kind,
or *along side* and neither before nor behind.

Bei, Mit, Nebst, Sammt.

Bei *with, at the house of*: ich esse bei ihm
but ich esse mit ihm is *together with him*.
Bei mir in my service, my house, estimation:
es ist Sitte bei uns⁴ — *with* some people or nation;
bestellen bei⁵, kaufen bei⁶, wachen bei ihm⁷,
sich erkundigen bei — make enquiry of him;
together with *nebst*, but along with is *mit*,
Sammt with or attached to, in common with it⁸.

2. Motion to or from a Place.

Nach means *to* a country, a city, a house;
in *into*, von *from it*, but *out of* it aus;
man reist über Dover nach Frankreich, nach Rom⁹;
man kommt aus der Kirche¹⁰ — nach Hause or home.

1. We go along the bank of the river: wir gehen den Fluß entlang; 2. on the spot, at the place. These are exceptions, for an here means *upon*. Auf der Stelle means *on the spot, at once*; 3. I am at work; 4. it is customary with us; 5. order of; 6. buy at one's shop; 7. watch by one's bedside; 8. Gott hat mich sammt allen Creaturen erschaffen; 9. one travels by Dover to France, to Rome; 10. one comes from church.

Zu, An.

Zu means *to a person*: sie kamen zu mir;
an *up to* an object: wir gehen an die Thür,
adressiren an Einen und schreiben an ihn¹;
but nach *to a place*: as, wir reisen nach Wien;
man bringt mir den Mantel² — to keep or to wear,
zu mir — to deposit perhaps in my care.

Zu means to a place with an object in view;
the ultimate limit's bis an or bis zu:
man füllt es zum Rande, he fills it quite full,
wir gehen zur Schule attend, go to school,
zum Brunnen for water, zum Tische for bread,
zum Balle, zur Arbeit, zu Bette to bed;
to call to account zur Verantwortung ziehen;
von Straße zu Straße, von Berlin nach Wien.

Auf.

Auf means, with the dative, *at* some public place;
or motion to, with the accusative case:
man geht auf den Ball, auf den Markt, auf das Feld³,
auf die Post, auf die Welt⁴, in die vornehme Welt⁵,
auf's Land⁶, auf die Börse⁷, die Hochzeit⁸, Parade⁹,
auf den Weg¹⁰, den Spaziergang¹¹, die Jagd¹², Promenade,
man geht auf die Straße goes into the street,
kommt bis auf den Grund, bis auf deutsches Gebiet¹³.
But we say in die Schule, Gesellschaft zu gehen;
in's Concert, in's Theater, in's Feld to campaign.

3. Adverbial Clauses denoting Time

In, Während.

The time during which things continue, take place,
is während or in, or expressed by a case:

1. To adress or write to;
2. one brings me the cloak;
3. one goes to the ball, to market, to the field (to work);
4. to the post, into the world;
5. into the fashionable world;
6. into the country;
7. to the exchange (on change);
8. to the marriage;
9. on parade;
10. on the road;
11. on the public walk;
12. goes -ahunting;
13. to the ground or bottom, as far as German territory.

es dauerte während des Jahres — ein Jahr¹,
es geschah in dem Winter und im Januar²,
in der Nacht or bei Nacht oder Nachts in the night,
either während or in seiner Anwesenheit³.

Binnen, Innerhalb. Ueber, Lang, Durch, Unter.

To define more exactly, say binnen *within*
(or innerhalb not with the future) for in.

Throughout über, lang, durch come last in the phrase:
die Nacht durch, den Tag über, Tagelang days,
Unter'm Gottesdienst, unter der Arbeit geschehen⁴,
unter Friedrichs Regierung or during his reign.

An.

The days of the week and the months either can
be expressed by a case, or the dative with an:
des Montags, des Morgens, des Abends are said,
or am Montag, am Morgen, am Abend⁵ instead.
We say kommenden Montag defining the day,
den achtzehnten Mai or the eighteenth of May;
or am kommenden Montag⁶, am folgenden Tage⁷,
im Anfang, am Ende (or zum)⁸; mit dem Schläge⁹;
in der Dämmerung¹⁰, im Zwiellicht¹¹ und in einem Nu¹²;
Zeit¹³, Stunde and Mal: as, zur Stunde¹⁴, take zu;
gegen Mittag, um Ostern¹⁵ about; but we say
um *at* — as, um vier Uhr — with hours of the day.

Bei, Mit.

When an action has something concurrent with it,
on or *at* which it happens, say bei oder mit:

1. It lasted during the year — a year; 2. it took place in
winter, in January; 3. during his presence, when he was present;
4. to happen during divine service, during work; 5. on Monday,
in the morning, in the evening; 6. next monday; 7. the following
day; 8. in the beginning or end (also zum Anfang, zum Ende);
9. at the stroke of twelve; es ist Schlag vier or auf den Schlag
vier Uhr, it is just going to strike four o'clock; 10. at dawn
or in the evening twilight; 11. in the twilight; 12. in a mo-
ment (also in einem Augenblicke, in diesem Augenblicke); 13. zu dieser
Zeit at this time; 14. at the hour; 15. towards noon, about Easter.

bei der Ankunft des Königs¹ or on the event,
beim Scheiden at parting, or just when I went,
bei der Arbeit at work, during reading beim Lesen,
bei dieser Gelegenheit, on this occasion;
mit dem Einbruch der Nacht at the fall of the night,
mit dem Anbruch des Tages²; in time mit der Zeit.

Auf, Bis.

Auf follows *arrange for, postpone or delay*:
ich schiebe auf Morgen³, — till some future day;
ich vertage auf einige Wochen adjourn;
we say auf Wiederkommen! until we return.
Man verspricht oder braucht es zum Morgen⁴, requires,
man dingt auf ein Jahr but zum Neujahr⁵ one hires.
Till the hours, terms or days of the week, merely bis;
but elsewhere combine prepositions with this:
bis Morgen⁶, bis Pfingsten⁷ — with adverbs bis dann⁸;
we complete — bis zum Schlusse, extend it — bis an;
all but two, bis auf zwei; and bis auf diesen Tag;
so, bis in die Mitte, bis über, bis nach.

4. Adverbial Clauses expressing Cause, Instrument, Means, Motive, Source.

Mit, Von.

The *instrument, with* which or *by* which, has mit;
von means *by a cause* — done directly by it:
mit Leitern ersteigen⁹, mit Kreide geschrieben¹⁰,
von dem Feuer gebrannt¹¹, von dem Feinde gefrießen¹².

Durch, Von.

Things come about durch: as, er starb durch den Degen¹³,
are done actively von: er ist naß von dem Regen¹⁴.

1. On the king's arrival; 2. at break of day; 3. I put off till morning; 4. one promises or requires it by to-morrow; 5. one hires for a year, or till the new year; 6. till to-morrow; 7. till Whitsuntide; 8. till then; 9. to mount or scale by ladders; 10. written with chalk; 11. burnt by the fire; 12. driven by the enemy; 13. he died by the sword; 14. he is wet from the rain.

Durch *by means of* of a quality, action, or *by*:
as, durch Ihren Beistand und durch Schmeichelei¹,
er erhält sich durch Fleiß², fesselt durch die Gestalt³,
but on purpose mit Fleiß, and by force mit Gewalt.

Bei, Vor.

Bei *considering* some quality, *with* or *in spite*:
bei all seiner (vor lauter) Zudringlichkeit⁴;
kaum halten wir bei solcher Theuerung jetzt Haus⁵;
bei einiger Sparsamkeit kommen wir aus⁶.

Aus.

Aus tells us the motive: aus Liebe gesagt⁷;
the material: aus Tuch von dem Schneider gemacht⁸;
daraus werden, zusammengesetzt sein, bestehen⁹;
one's birthplace: aus Spanien a native of Spain¹⁰;
the source: das entsteht aus¹¹, entspringt aus it springs;
wir erfahren von Menschen¹², aus Sachen from things;
die Pflanze entwickelt¹³ sich aus — from the seed;
but herrühren, herkommen von to proceed.

Vor.

A hindrance or cause in a negative way
takes vor, which comes after *dissolve* or *decay*:
vor Hitze zererschmelzen¹⁴, vor Kummer vergehen¹⁵;
vor Lärm nichts zu hören¹⁶, vor Nebel nicht sehen¹⁷.

Halben, Halber, Wegen, Um — willen.

For halber — for pleasure, for money, for praise,
or some other motive that inwardly sways;

1. By your assistance, by flattery; 2. he supports himself by his industry; 3. captivates by his form; 4. with all his importunity (intrusiveness); 5. with such dearness, in such dear times, we can scarcely keep house; 6. with some economy, we can subsist; 7. said from love; 8. made from cloth by the tailor; 9. become of; composed of; consist of; 10. or aus Spanien gebürtig; 11. arise, to be produced from; 12. we learn from; 13. is developed from; 14. to melt from heat; 15. to waste away or die of sorrow; 16. not to hear for noise; 17. not to see for mist.

with pronouns we say *meinethalben* combined and *halben* may follow with nouns when defined¹. When the reason or obstacle's not of the mind, then *wegen* is what you will commonly find: *deswegen bestrafen*² and *tadeln* to blame, *um* — *willen* for benefit, peace, or good name.

Vermöge by dint of some physical cause — of practise, or working of natural laws; *vermittelst by means of* — for *durch* or for *mit*; and *laut in accordance with* words or with writ; *frakt in virtue of* office, commission or pact; *zufolge in consequence of* any act.

5. Adverbial Clauses signifying Manner.

Sn.

Er ist *in* einem Zustande in a condition, in der Lage the state, in der Stelle position, im Kriege at war, im Gesicht or in sight, in der Höhe von siebenzig Fuß at the height.

The manner takes auf before *Weise* and *Art*; in German auf *Deutsch*, and auf *Abschlag* in part; wir leben nach oder auf englische *Weise*³; in travelling wir sind auf dem Wege — der *Reise*⁴; auf der *Eisenbahn* reisen to travel by rail; zu *Fuße*⁵, zu *Pferde*⁶, zu *Schiffe* to sail; mit der *Post*, mit dem *Dampfboot*, dem *Omnibus* gehen⁷; auf der *Hut*, auf der *Wache* — der *Lauer* zu stehen⁸; we say auf jeden Fall for *in every case*, according to nach, seinem *Stande* gemäß⁹.

1. When the noun has an article or demonstrative or other word which defines it, *halben* may be used: as, *des Geldes halben* or *halber* for the sake of the money; but *Vergnügens halber* for pleasure; 2. to punish for it; 3. we live in the English fashion or manner; 4. we are on the way, on the journey; 5. by foot; 6. on horseback; 7. to go by post, by the steamboat, by the omnibus; 8. to be on guard, on the watch, to lie in wait; 9. in conformity with his rank.

Auf consequent on: as, er kömmt auf Geheiß¹,
thut es auf Ihren Wunsch², Ihren Rath your advice;
Ihren Vorschlag proposal, Befehl your behest;
auf eigenes Gesuch or at one's own request,
auf die Kosten, Gefahr, or Verantwortlichkeit³,
auf Ihr Wort⁴, auf Credit⁵, and auf Sicht or at sight.

Zu, Für.

The effect and the limit and purpose have zu:
man handelt zum Zwecke one acts with the view;
es dient uns zur Speise it serves us for food;
es gereicht mir zum Vortheil turns out for my good;
zum Besten der Armen — für Sie — for the poor;
for zu in the singular say zum oder zur.
Die Arbeit für heute the work for to-day,
where für means *attached* in a general way.

Mit.

A noun meaning spirit or manner has mit,
if the sense be expressed by an adverb from it:
mit Tapferkeit fechten courageously,
mit Nutzen, Gewinnst advantageously,
mit Eile in haste and mit Muße at leisure
on purpose mit Fleiß, mit Vergnügen with pleasure.

Bei, An, Nach.

I protest or I swear, ich betheure, ich schwöre
bei Allem was heilig ist, bei meiner Ehre⁶;
man kann einen Baum an den Früchten erkennen⁷;
nach dem Vater und bei seinem Namen ihn nennen⁸;
man greift es beim Hefte an takes by the handle,
bei Strafe on pain, and bei Licht or by candle;
bei Kräften⁹, bei guter Gesundheit in health;
bei Laune¹⁰, bei Sinnen¹¹, bei Gelde in wealth.

1. By command, at the bidding; 2. he does it at your desire;
3. at one's costs, risk, or responsibility; 4. (I believe it) on your
word; 5. on credit; 6. by all that is holy, by my honour;
7. one can know a tree by its fruits; 8. call him after the father,
by his name; 9. in vigour; 10. in good humour or spirits;
11 in one's senses.

Für, Um, Gegen, Nach, Unter.

Man kauft und verkauft nach der Elle¹ by ell —
für or um einen Thaler² to buy for or sell.

In exchange for is gegen; um measures excess:
um tausend Pfund minder a thousand pounds less;
man tauscht³, wettet gegen⁴, und thut gegen Lohn⁵,
unter schweren Bedingungen⁶ und Caution⁷.

1. One buys or sells by the ell; 2. for a thaler; 3. one barter or exchanges; 4. one bets; 5. does for a reward or for wages; 6. on hard terms; 7. on bail (also gegen Bürgschaft or gegen Caution).

Punctuation.

The marks of punctuation are the same in German as in English. The following peculiarities are to be noticed.

1. Subordinate sentences in German are always separated from the principal by a comma, which is sometimes omitted in English: as, ich weiß, daß er es gesagt hat, I know that he has said it.

2. When several elements are enumerated, the comma comes between them, except those connected by und and oder: as, violet, blau, grün, gelb und roth; sie lachen, sprechen oder singen.

3. Adverbial phrases are not separated from the rest of a simple sentence, unless there be several of them. Unter Karl's des Fünften Regierung war Antwerpen die lebendigste und herrlichste Stadt in der Welt, under Charles the Fifth's government, Antwerp was the most lively and splendid city in the world (Sch.).

Prosody.

Prosody treats *first* of the quantity and accent of syllables, and *secondly* of versification.

1. **Quantity of Syllables.** In Greek and Latin, the quantity of a syllable was determined by the time taken to pronounce it; in German the quantity, so far as the metre is concerned, is determined by the accent, and the accent (see above) is determined by the importance of the syllable. All accented syllables are long, unaccented syllables are short, and common syllables are long or short according to their position. The general rules for the accentuation of syllables have been already given. In regard to common syllables, it is to be observed, in addition,

1. that between two long syllables, a common syllable is short: e. g. h̄or' mīch ān, fīngt im W̄alde;
2. between two short syllables a common syllable is long: e. g. eiltē dūrch den Wald, wunderbārē Welt, redē wie gēschah's;
3. a common syllable is lengthened immediately before or after two short syllables: wo bist dū gewesen, da lācheltē er;
4. a common syllable beside another common syllable may be either long or short.

Versification.

A foot is a combination of long and short syllables; the regular repetition of feet forms metre. The most common feet used in verse are:

1. the Iambus, a short syllable followed by a long, ∪ —: as, Geduld, vergnügt;
2. the Trochee, a long followed by a short, — ∪: as, Menschen, Jugend;

3. the Spondee, two long syllables, — —; when the principal accent is on the last syllable, it is called a rising spondee: as, ganz gut; when the principal accent is on the first syllable, it is said to be a falling spondee: as, Allmacht;
3. the Dactyl, a long syllable followed by two shorts, — ∪ ∪: as, Könige, heilige;
4. the Anapaest, two short syllables followed by a long, ∪ ∪ —: as, der Verlust, Majestät.

Iambic Verse.

Iambic verse is much used in Tragedy. The line frequently receives an additional short syllable called a feminine termination, as in the second line that follows:

Ein' feste Burg | ist unser Gott,
Ein' gute Wehr | und Waffen.

A rising spondee is now and again admissible in Iambic verse.

Trochaic Verse.

Trochaic verse admits a sinking spondee now and then instead of the Trochee. It usually consists of four feet.

Fest gemauert | in der | Erde
Steht die | Form aus | Lehm gebrannt.

Dactylic Verse.

Dactylic verse may consist of two, three, four, five or six feet. Instead of the Dactyl, a sinking spondee may now and then be used. The last foot is not usually a Dactyl; but may be a Trochee or one syllable. Modern writers admit the trochee in other places also.

Chret die | Frauen, sie | flechten und | weben
Himmliche | Rosen in's | irdische | Leben,
Flechten der | Liebe beglückendes | Band &c.

Dactylic Hexameter, called also Heroic verse, consists of six feet.

The Elegaic Pentameter is divided into two Hemistichs; each Hemistich consists of two feet and one long syllable. In the first Hemistich, Spondees and Trochees may be used for Dactyls, but not in the second. Pentameter verse is never used alone, but always in conjunction with Hexameter. In the following, the first and second lines are Hexameters, and the second and fourth Pentameters.

Zwei sind | Wege, auf | welchen der | Mensch auf | Jugend em-
por|steht;
Schließt sich der | Eine dir | zu, || thut sich der | Andre dir | auf;
Handelnd er|ringt der | Glückliche | sie, der | Leidende | duldend;
Wohl dem | den sein Ge|schick || liebend auf | beiden ge|führt.

Anapaestic Verse.

Anapaestic verse in German admits a rising Spondee, and is often mixed with Iambuses.

Und es wal|let und sie|det und brau|set und zis|cht
Wie wenn Was|ser mit Feu|er sich mengt,
Bis zum Him|mel spritz|et der damp|fende Gis|cht
Und Fluth | auf Fluth | sich ohn' En|de drängt.

Rhyme.

When two or more words have the same sound in their last accented syllable, there is a rhyme. Short vowels do not form a pure rhyme with long ones, thus *beissen* does not go well with *reisen*, nor *Fuß* with *Fluß*. On the other hand, words may form good rhymes, although they are not spelt exactly alike, for rhyme depends upon the sound not the spelling: thus, *Güte* and *Blütthe*, *groß* and *Moos*, *oft* and *hofft*, *Bild* and *schilt* are good rhymes.

The following vowels and diphthongs are also considered good rhymes: *ü* long rhymes with *ie*, *ü* short with *i*, *ö* with

e, eu with ei. Thus, grüßen rhymes with fließen, müssen with wissen, Höh'n with stehn; Beute with Seite. To recapitulate:

Words rhyme by sound not as they spell;
short vowels and long do not go well;
but grüßen, müssen, Höh'n and Beute
match fließen, wissen, stehn and Seite.

Vocabulary of Primary Nouns.

List I. Masculine Monosyllables

belonging to the Weak Declension.

Der Bär bear	der Lump rascal
der Bursch lad	der Mensch human being
der Christ christian	der Moor moor
der Fink finch	der Narr fool
der Fürst prince reigning	der Och ox
der Geck fool, fop	der Pfaff priest
der Genos associate	der Prinz prince, member of the royal family
der Gesell fellow-workman	der Schenk cupbearer, retailer of wines
der Graf count	der Thor fool
der Held hero	der Vorfahr ancestor.
der Herr lord, gentleman	
der Hirt shepherd	

Obs. Bursch, Hirt and Pfaff are more commonly written Bursche, Hirte, Pfaffe. Och and Oche, Gesell and Geselle are equally common.

List II. Feminine Monosyllables

belonging to the Weak Declension.

Die Art kind, species	die Bai bay
die Au or Aue meadow	die Bucht bay or hut
die Bahn path, road	die Burg old castle

die Cur cure	die Schlacht battle
die Fahrt drive, passage	die Schrift writing
die Flur field near town	die Schuld debt
die Fluth flood	die Spur trace, track
die Form form	die Stirn forehead, front
die Fracht freight	die That deed
die Frau woman	die Thür door
die Frist respite	die Trift pasture
die Gluth blaze	die Tracht costume
die Yacht yacht	die Uhr watch, clock
die Jagd chase	die Wahl choice, election
die Kost fare, food	die Wehr defence, bulwarks
Pl. Kosten expenses	dit Welt world
die Last load	die Zahl number
die List artifice	die Zeit time.
die Markt market	
die Pest pest, pestilence	
die Pflicht duty	Die Gefahr danger
die Post post	die Gebühr due
die Qual torment	die Gewähr guarantee
die Saat seed	die Ohnmacht swoon
die Schaar troop, crowd	die Vollmacht plenipotentiary
die Schicht layer, stratum	power.

The following are rare in the plural:

Die Brut brood	die Pest pest
die Gicht gout	die Raft rest
die Gift gift (rare)	die Ruhr dysentery
die Mitgift dowry	die Schur shearing
(das Gift poison)	die Sicht sight
die Gunst favour	die Absicht intention,
diekehr in compounds:	pl. Absichten
die Einkehr inn	die Streu litter
die Rückkehr return &c.	die Sucht disease or mania
die Milz spleen	die Wacht guard
die Mauth custom	die Willkühr caprice
die Pacht lease	die Wucht weight.

List III. Weak Feminine Nouns

ending in el and er.

die Achsel shoulder	die Kuppel cupola
die Ampel lamp	die Kurbel winch handle
die Amsel blackbird	die Mandel almond
die Angel hook	die Mangel mangle
die Bibel bible	die Mispel medlar
die Brezel cracknell	die Mistel mistletoe
die Buckel boss	die Morchel kind of mushroom
die Dattel date	die Muschel muscle (shell)
die Deichsel carriage pole	die Nadel needle
die Distel thistle	die Nessel nettle
die Droffel thrush	die Nudel vermicelli
die Eichel acorn	die Orgel organ
die Epistel epistle	die Pappel poplar
die Fabel fable	die Primel primrose
die Fackel torch	die Ranunkel ranunculus
die Falbel flounce	die Raspel rasp
die Fessel fetter	die Rassel rattle
die Fibel primer	die Regel rule
die Fiedel fiddle	die Runzel wrinkle
die Fistel pipe, tube	die Schachtel (band) box
die Formel formula	die Schaufel shovel
die Gabel fork	die Schaufel swing
die Geißel scourge	die Schindel shingle
die Gurgel throat	die Schüssel dish
die Hasel hazel	die Semmel roll of bread
die Hechel heckle	die Sichel sickle
die Hummel humble-bee	die Spindel spindle
die Insel island	die Staffel step
die Kabel cable	die Stoppel stubble
die Kanzel pulpit	die Striegel curry comb
die Kartoffel potatoe	die Tafel table
die Klausel clause	die Troddel tassle
die Klingel bell	die Trommel drum
die Kugel globe, bullet	die Trüffel truffle

die Zwiebel onion	die Kelter winepress
die Wachtel quail	die Klammer cramp
die Waffel wafer	die Klapper clapper
die (der) Wimpel pennon	die Lauer lurking place
die Windel swaddling clothes	die Leber liver
die Würfel die	die Leiter ladder
die Wurzel root	die Letter letterpress
	die Mauer wall
die Ader vein	die Marter torment
die Ammer (gold) hammer,	die Maser spot
die Auster oyster	pl. Masern measles
die Blatter blister	die Natter adder
pl. Blattern small pox	die Nummer number
die Butter butter	die Nuster nostril
die Ceder cedar	die Oper opera
die Dauer duration	die Otter otter
die Eller alder	die Rüster elm
die Elster magpie	die Scheuer shed
die Faser fibre	die Schleuder sling
die Feder pen	die Schulter shoulder
die Feier celebration	die Steuer tax
die Fiber fibre	die Viper viper
die (der) Glitter tinsel	die Wimper eyelash
die Folter torture, rack	die Zaser fibre
die Halfter halter	die Ziffer cypher
die Kammer chamber	die Zither guitar.

List IV. Feminine Monosyllables

belonging to the Strong Declension, all of which modify
a, o and u in the plural.

die Angst anxiety	die Bank pl. Bänke benches,
die Ankunft arrival	Banken banks
die Armbrust cross-bow	die Braut bride
die Ausflucht evasion	die Brust breast
die Axt axe, hatchet	die Faust fist

die Gans goose	die Nacht night
die Geschwulst swelling	die Nath seam
die Gruft grave, pit	die Noth distress
die Hand hand	die Nuß nut
die Haut skin	die Sau pl. Säue sows
die Kluft cleft	Sauen wild swine
die Kraft power	die Schnur string
die Kuh cow	die Stadt town
die Kunst art	die Statt in compounds:
die Laus louse	Bettstatt bedstead
die Luft air	• Werkstatt workshop
die Lust delight	die Wand wall
die Macht power, pl. Mächte	die Wurst sausage
in compounds Mächten	die Zucht race
die Magd maid	die Zunft guild
die Maus mouse	die Zusammenkunft meeting.

The following have no plural:

Die Acht care, outlawry	die Pein pain
die Begier desire	die Scham shame
die Furcht fear	die Scheu shyness
die Hast haste	die Schmach disgrace
die Hut guard	die Spreu the chaff
die Milch milk	die Zier the ornament.

List V. Neuter Monosyllables

forming the Plural in *er*.

Das Raß carrion	das Dach roof
das Amt office	das Dorf village
das Bad bath	das Ei egg
das Band, Bänder ribbons,	das Fach compartment
Bande ties	das Faß cask, tub
das Bild picture	das Feld field
das Blatt leaf	das Geld money
das Brett board	das Glas glass
das Buch book	das Glied limb

das Grab	grave	das Maul	mouth (of beasts)
das Gras	grass	das Nest	nest
das Gut	estate	das Pfand	pledge
das Haupt	head	das Rad	wheel
das Haus	house	das Reis	twig
das Holz	wood	das Rind	bullock
das Horn	horn	das Schild, Schilder	sign boards
das Huhn	chicken	Schilde (m)	shields
das Kalb	calf	das Schloß	lock, castle
das Kind	child	das Schwert	sword
das Kleid	dress	das Thal	valley
das Korn	grain	das Trumm	lump, stump
das Kraut	herb	pl.	ruins
das Lamm	lamb	das Tuch	cloth, handkerchief
das Land, Länder	countries	das Volk	people
Lande	tracts of land	das Wamm	doublet
das Licht	light, Lichter	das Weib	wife
lights		das Wort, Wörter	single words
das Lied	song [(Lichte	Worte	speech
das Loch	hole		

**Neuters in ge and Foreign
Words with Plural in er.**

Das Gemach	apartment
das Gemüth	mind, disposition
das Geschlecht	sex, gender, species
das Gesicht	pl. Gesichter
faces	
die Gesichte	visions
das Gespenst	spectre
das Gewand	garment
das Hospital	} hospital
das Spital	
das Regiment	regiment
das Eigenthum	property, pos- session
das Heiligthum	sanctuary;
others	in thum

Masculines

forming the Plural in er.

Der Geist	spirit
der Gott	god
der Hundsfott	cowardly rascal
der Leib	body
der Mann	man
der Ort, Derter	small places,
Orte	places in general
der Rand	margin
der Vormund	guardian
der Wald	wood, forest
der Wicht	wight, creature
der Wurm	worm
der Irrthum	error
der Reichthum	riches

List VI. Primary Neuter Nouns

forming the Plural in *e*, when the sense admits of a plural.

Das All universe	das Heu hay
das Antlitz countenance	das Hirn brain
das Beet bed (flowers)	das Jahr year
das Begeh'r desire	das Joch yoke
das Beil hatchet	das Kinn chin
das Bein leg	das Knie knee
das Besteck case	das Kreuz cross
das Bier beer	das Laub foliage
das Blech tin	das Lehn fief
das Blut blood	das Lob praise
das Boot boat	das Loos lot
das Brod bread	das Loth solder, plumb-line
das Bund bunch	das Mahl meal
das Deck deck	das Malz malt
das Ding thing	das Mark marrow
das Duzend dozen	das Maß measure
das Eis ice	das Meer sea
das Elend misery	das Mehl meal
das Erz ore	das Merk mark
das Fell skin	das Moor moor
das Fest feast	das Moos moss
das Fett fat	das Mus marmalade
das Fleisch flesh	das Netz net
das Floß float	das Niet rivet
das Garn yarn	das Obst fruit
das Gas gas	das Oehr ear of needle
das Gift poison	das Öl oil
das Glück luck	das Orhst hogshead
das Groß gross	das Pack mob
das Haar hair	das Pech pitch
das Haß bay	das Pestschaft seal
das Harz resin	das Pferd horse
das Heer army	das Pfund pound
das Hest handle	das Quart quart
das Heil salvation	das Recht right

das Reh roe	das Stück piece
das Reich kingdom	das Tau cable
das Rieß ream	das Thier animal
das Rieth reed	das Thor door-gate
das Riff reef	das Verbot prohibition
das Rohr reed	das Verhör trial
das Roß steed	das Verließ dungeon
das Salz salt	das Versteck hiding-place
das Schaf sheep	das Vieh beast
das Scheit piece of wood, log, billet	das Wiefz fleece
das Schilf reed	das Wachs wax
das Schmalz grease	das Wehr dam
das Schock 60	das Werft wharf
das Schrot small shot	das Berg tow
das Schwein swine	das Werk work
das Seil rope	das Wild venison
das Sieb sieve	das Wohl interest
das Spiel play, game	das Wrack wreck
das Stift tack	das Zelt tent
das Stroh straw	das Zeug stuff
	das Ziel aim.

List of Neuter Nouns ending in el, en, er.

Das Alter age	das Laster vice
das Bauer cage	das Malter corn-measure
das Becken bason	das Messer knife
das Euter udder	das Mieder boddice
das Fenster window	das Muster pattern
das Feuer fire	das Opfer sacrifice
das Ferkel sucking pig	das Pflaster plaster for wounds, pavement
das Fuder waggon-load	das Polster cushion, bolster
das Gatter } grating, lattice	das Pulver powder
das Gitter }	das Rudel herd (of deer &c).
das Kissen cushion	das Ruder oar
das Leben life	das Segel sail

das Seidel pint	das Wesen existence
das Siegel seal	das Wetter weather
das Steuer rudder	das Wiesel weasel
das Ufer bank	das Wissen knowing
das Ungeziefer vermin	das Wunder wonder
das Vergnügen pleasure	das Zeichen sign
das Wasser water	das Zimmer room.

List VII. Masculines in el, en and er, which modify the vowels a and o in the Plural.

Der Acker field	der Magen stomach
der Apfel apple	der Mangel want
der Boden floor	der Mantel cloak
der Bruder brother	der Nabel navel
der Faden thread	der Nagel needle
der Garten garden	der Ofen stove
der Graben ditch	der Sattel saddle
der Hafen haven	der Schaden damage
der Hammel wether	der Schnabel beak
der Hammer hammer	der Schwager brother-in-law
der Laden shop	der Vater father
die Läden shops	der Vogel bird.
die Laden shutters	

List VIII. Masculines, which modify a, o and u in the Plural.

Abt abbot	Bischof bishop	Darm gut
Arzt physician	Block block	(pl. Gedärme)
Ast branch	Bock buck	Diebstahl theft
Bach brook	Brand brand	Draht wire
Balg brat	Brauch custom	Duft perfume
Ball ball	Bruch fraction, rup-	Fall case
Band volume	Busch shrub [ture	Fang catch
Bart beard	Chor choir	Floh flea
Bauch belly	Damm dam	Fluch curse
Baum tree	Dampf steam	Flug flight

Fluß river	Napf bason	Sohn son
Frosch frog	Palast palace	Spahn shaving, chip
Frost frost	Pabst pope	Spaß joke
Fuchs fox	Paß passport	Spruch sentence
Fuß foot	Pflock plug	Sprung leap
Gang passage	Pflug plough	Spund bung
Gast guest	Platz place	Stab staff
Genuß enjoyment	Probst provost	Stall stable
Geruch smell	Rang rank	Stamm stem
Gesang song	Rath councillor	Stand station
Grund ground	Raum space	Stoß stick
Guß gush	Rausch inebriation	Storch storch
Hahn cock	Rock coat	Stoß push
Hals neck	Rumpf rump	Strang string
Hof court	Saal saloon	Strauch shrub
Hut hat	Saft juice	pl. Sträucher,
Kahn boat	Sarg coffin	Sträucher
Kamm comb	Saß sentence	Strom stream
Kampf fight	Saum hem	Strumpf stocking
Kauf purchase	Schalk rogue	Stuhl chair
Klang sound	Schatz treasure	Sturm storm
Kloß dumpling	Schlag blow	Sturz fall, ruin
Kloß log	Schlauch leathern	Sumpf bog
Knopf button	apron	Tanz dance
Koch cook	Schlund throat	Thurm steeple
Kopf head	Schmaus feast	Ton sound
Korb basket	Schopf tuft	Topf pot
Krampf cramp	Schrank cupboard	Trank drink
Kranz wreath	Schurz apron	Traum dream
Kropf crop	Schuß shot	Trog trough
Krug pitcher	Schwamm sponge	Trumpf trump
Kuß kiss	Schwan swan	Verdruß vexation
Latz breast-cloth	Schwank prank	Vorrath store
Lauf career, course	Schwanz tail	Wall wall
Markt market	Schwarm swarm	Wanst paunch
Marsch march	Schwung swing	Weinstock vine
Morast bog	Schwur oath	Wolf wolf

Wuchs increase	Zahn tooth	Zopf tail
Wunsch wish	Zaum bridle	Zug procession
Wurf cast	Zaun hedge	Zwang compulsion
Wurm worm	Zoll tax	

Compounds.

Druck print pl. Drucke	Trag
pl. modified in compounds:	Abtrag partial payment
Abdruck impression, copy	Antrag proposal, office
pl. Abdrücke	Auftrag commission, order
Ausdruck expression	Betrag amount
Hang	Beitrag contribution
Abhang declivity	Ertrag proceeds, profits
Anhang appendage	Nachtrag supplement
Vorhang curtain	Vertrag agreement, compact
Zusammenhang context	Vortrag delivery
Laß	Zutrag the same as Beitrag
Ablaß letter of indulgence	Wand
Anlaß inducement	Aufwand expense, outlay
Einlaß admission, entrance	Einwand objection
	Vorwand pretext.

**List IX. Masculines containing a, o and u,
not modified in the Plural.**

Der Aal eel	der Dorſch codfish
der Aar eagle	der Druck print
der Ahorn maple-tree	der Erfolg success
der Amböß anvil	der Gemahl consort
der Anwalt solicitor	der Grad degree
der Arm arm	der Gran grain
der Bau building	der Gürt girdle
der Beſuch visit	der Hag hedge
der Bord board	der Hall sound
der Dachs badger	der Nachhall echo
der Docht wick	der Wiederhall (das Echo)
der Dolch dagger	der Halm stalk
der Dom cathedral	der Hauch breath

der Hort rock, refuge	der Schaft shaft, stalk
der Huf hoof	der Schall sound
der Hund dog	der Schluck gulp
der Karst hoe	der Schuft rascal
der Knall knell	der Schuh shoe
der Kobold goblin	der Spalt split
der Kork cork	der Staar starling
der Krah crane	der Stoff stuff, matter
der Lachs salmon	der Strauß ostrich
der Laut sound	der Taft time, bar
der Leichnam corpse	der Tag day
der Luchs lynx	der Thron throne
der Molch salamander	der Torf peat
der Mond moon	der Trunkenbold drunkard
der Park park pl. e or s	der Unhold monster
der Pfad path	der Verhack, Verhau abatis
der Pol pole	der Versuch attempt
der Puls pulse	der Vielfraß glutton
der Punkt point	der Wiedehopf hoopoe
der Ruf call	der Zoll inch
der Schacht pit	

Supplementary Lists.

A. List of Primary Masculine Nouns not contained in the previous Lists (with Synonyms).

Der Abend the evening	der Berg mountain
der Abschied the parting, fare- well, leave	der Bericht account, report
der Argwohn suspicion	der Bezirk circuit of a judge der Gerichtsbezirk
der Athem breath	der Bisam musk (der Moschus)
der Bann no pl. ban, denun- ciation (die Acht)	der Biß bite (of a dog)
der Belt the strait	der Blick look, glance der Anblick

der Blitz lightning	der Gyps gypsum
der Bräutigam bridegroom	der Gischt yeast
der Brief letter (to a friend &c.)	(die Heefe lees)
der Dank thanks	der Gram grief no pl.
der Deich dyke (der Damm)	(der Kummer)
der Deut doit	der Grauß horror
der Dieb, die Diebin thief; thief	der Greif griffin
on the cross der Schächer	der Greis an old man
der Dienst service	der Gries coarse sand, gravel,
der Dietrich picklock	grit (der Kies)
der Dreizack trident	der Griff gripe, Begriff idea
(der Trident, der Tridens)	der Grimm fury
der Durst thirst	(die Wuth, der Zorn)
der Ephen ivy	der Groll resentment
der Eppich parsley	(der Unwille)
(die Petersilie)	der Habicht hawk (der Falke)
der Ernst earnest	der Häring herring
(die Ernsthaftigkeit)	der Hai shark (der Haifisch)
der Essig vinegar	der Hain grove (das Gehölz)
der Fasching carnival	der Hanf hemp
(der Carneval)	der Harm grief
der Fehl a fault	stronger than Gram
der Befehl order	der Harnisch harness, armour
der Feind the enemy	(das Geschirr for horses)
der Filz felt, niggard	der Haß hatred no pl.
der Firniß varnish	der Hecht pike (a fish)
der Fisch fish	der Hehl concealment
der Fittig wing (poet. for Flügel)	der Herd hearth
der Flachß flax, no pl.	der Hengst stallion
der Flaum down	der Herbst autumn
(die Flaumfedern)	der Hieb stroke
der Fleiß industry	(der Schlag, der Streich)
der Fraß food for beasts	der Hirsch stag
der Freund friend	der Hohn scorn
der Fries frieze	der Honig honey
der Fug right, der Unfug dis-	der Iltis or Iltiß polecat
order, nuisance	der Imbiß luncheon

der Käfig cage for large beasts (das Bauer cage for birds)	der Kürbis gourd, pumpkin
der Kalk lime (die Kalferde)	der Lärm or Lärmen noise
der Kai quay	der Lahn thin plate (of metal)
der Keil wedge (for inser- tion)	der Laich spawn of fish
der Keim germ	der Lehm loam, clay (clay der Thon)
der Kelch the cup	der Leichnam body, corpse
der Kerl fellow (der Bursche)	der Leim glue
der Kern kernel	der Lein lint, flax
der Kibitz lapwing	der Lenz spring (der Frühling)
der Kiesel gravel (der Gries gravel)	der Lohn wages (die Gage)
der Kien deal wood	der Lug lie obs. for die Lüge; (Lug and Trug <i>sam.</i> false- hood and deceit)
der Kitt cement das Cement	der Mais maize
der Klecks blot of ink, blur (der Tintenleck)	der Mennig minium
der Knecht servant	der Meth mead (das Honigwasser)
der Knicks curtsey (die Verbeugung)	der Mönch monk
der Kniff the trick	der Muth spirit, courage
der Knirps a shrimp or dwarf (der Zwerg)	der Naseweis saucy fellow
der König king	der Neid envy (die Mißgunst)
der Kohl cabbage	der Niesewurz hellebore
der Koth dirt or mud (der Schmuß dirt, filth)	der Oheim uncle (der Onkel)
der Kram (small) trade (der Handel commerce)	der Ost east (der Osten)
der Kranich crane (bird)	der Parchent, Barchent fustian
der Krebs crab	der Pedell beadle in univer- sities
der Kreis circle (der Umkreis, Zirkel)	der Pelz (1) fur or (2) fur coat 1. das Pelzwerk 2. der Pelzrock
der Krepp crape (der Flor)	der Pfeil arrow
der Krieg war	der Pfennig the tenth part of a groschen
	der Pferd fold for sheep (die Pferche)

der Pfühl bolster (das Polster)	der Schilling shilling
{ der Pomp pomp	der Schimpf insult
(die Pracht, das Gepränge)	(die Beleidigung)
{ der Prunk state	der Schirm umbrella, screen,
der Puß dress, finery	shelter, (also der Schuß)
(der Staat)	der Schlamm mud (in water)
der Qualm thick smoke	(mud in the streets der
der Quark curd	Dreck)
der Quark und Molken pl.	der Schleim slime
der Rahm cream	der Schlich slow step, arti-
(die Sahne, der Kern)	fice
der Raub robbery	der Schliff polish
(die Räuberei)	der Schliß slit (der Riß)
der Raub smoke	der Schlott chimney of a
der Reif rime	steamer
der Reim rhyme	der Schmauch smoke
der Reis rice	der Schmelz enamel
der Reifig brushwood	(der Email, die Schmelz-
(das Reisholz, Reiserf)	arbeit)
der Reiz allurement	der Schmied smith
(die Lockung)	der Schmier grease for carts
der Ring ring	der Schmuck ornament (jewel)
{ der Riß rent (der Spalt)	der Schmuß dirt, filth
{ der Riß crevice	(mire, mud, Roth, Schlamm)
(die Ritze, die Spalte)	der Schnitt cut
der Rost rust	der Schreck start from fear
der Ruck jerk (der Stoß)	(der Schauder)
der Ruhm glory, fame	der Schrein shrine
der Rum rum	der Schritt step (der Tritt)
der Ruß soot	der Schutt rubbish
der Schein shine, brightness	der Schuß protection, defence
der Empfangschein receipt	der Schweif tail poet. for
der Schelm rogue (endearingly)	Schwanz; also, train of a
der Scherz jest (der Spaß)	dress
der Schierling hemlock	der Schweiß sweat
der Schild shield, buckler,	der Schleim slime
in heraldry Wappenschild	der Sect sack (sort of wine)

der Senf mustard	der Streif stripe (of colour) (der Streifen)
der Sieg victory	der Streit quarrel, strife
der Sinn sense (faculty, a feeling, meaning)	der Strich line, grain in wood (die Fibernichtung)
der Siß the seat of a chair or of a saddle, position as representative	der Strick cord
der Sold pay of private sol- diers; (pay of officers die Besoldung)	der Stuß crop (anything cut short)
der Spath spar (geol.)	der Tand trash
der Specht woodpecker	der Tang sort of sea-weed
der Speck bacon	der Tausch exchange, barter (der Tauschhandel)
der Speer spear	der Teich the pond (der Fischteich, der Weiher)
der Spelt spelt	der Teig dough
der Sperber sparrow-hawk	der Teppich carpet
der Sperling sparrow	der Text text
der Spieß pike (halbert) (die Piefe pike) der Bratspieß spit	der Thau dew
der Spott mockery (die Spotterei, der Hohn, das Gespötte)	der Thee tea
der Spuß ghost, vision	der Theer tar or das Theer
der Stag stay (navig.)	der Thon clay (der Lehm)
der Stahl steel	der Thran train-oil
der Stand position, state	der Tisch table (die Tafel)
der Staub dust	der Tod death
der Stein stone	der Tomback pinchbeck (der Pinchbeck)
der Stich prick (with a needle)	der Toast toast
der Stiel handle (das Heft)	der Trab trot (der Trott)
der Stier bull (der Bulle)	der Trapp basalt (der Basalt)
der Stint smelt (die Schmelte)	der Trick trick at cards
der Stör sturgeon	der Trieb drift, impulse, herd of cattle
der Strand strand, beach	der Tritt step (der Schritt)
der Streich stroke (der Schlag, der Hieb)	der Trost comfort, consolation
	der Trott trot (der Trab)
	der Troß defiance, scorn (or a challenge Ausforderung)

der Trug, Betrug deceit	der Wink wink, sign
der Trunk drink, draught	der Wirth host (private)
der Tranke drink, beverage	Gastwirth public host
der Trupp troop, band	der Wisch whisk for cleaning
(ein Haufen)	der Wiszmuth bismuth
der Unflath filth	der Wiß wit
(der Koth, der Schmutz)	der Wolfram wolfram, arsenical iron-ore
der Urlaub leave of absence	der Zank quarrel, dispute
der Wjop hyssop	(der Streit)
der Wahn delusion	der Zorn anger
der Waid woad	der Zweck aim, purpose
der Weg way	(das Ziel)
der Wein wine	der Zwerg dwarf
der Wermuth wormwood	der Zwieback biscuit
der Werth worth	der Zwirn thread (das Garn)
der West west (der Westen)	der Zwist dissension
der Wicht wight or creature	

List B. Masculines ending in el, en, er, which do not modify a, o and u in the Plural.

Der Adel the nobility	der Beutel bag (der Sack)
(die Noblesse, Nobilität)	der Geldbeutel purse
der Adler eagle	der Biber beaver (der Castor)
der Aerger vexation, anger	der Bissen bite, mouthful
(Zorn, Verdruß, Aergerniß)	(der Mundvoll)
der Aermel sleeve	der Bogen bow (archery)
der Aether ether	der Bogen sheet of paper
der Ampfer sorrel	der Bolzen bolt (arrow)
der Sauerampfer	der Braten roast (meat)
der Anger grass-plot	der Brunnen well, fountain
der Grasanger	der Büffel buffalo
der Anker anchor	der Bügel stirrup
der Balken beam	der Büschel tuft (of hair)
der Ballen bale, (bundle)	(der Schopf)
der Becher cup, goblet (der Kelch)	der Büttel beadle (an officer)
der Besen broom (for sweeping)	(der Scherge)

der Busen bosom	der Galgen gibbet, gallows
der Canaster kind of tobacco	der Gaumen roof of the
der Deckel cover (lid die Decke)	mouth, palate
der Degen sword (das Schwert)	der Geifer saliva, slaver
der Dinkel spelt, German	(der Sabber)
wheat (der Spelz)	der Giebel gable
der Donner thunder	der Gimpel dunce
der Dotter, Eidotter yolk	(der Dumbart)
(das Eigelb)	der Ginster broom (the plant)
(der Dreier a little coin)	der Gipfel summit (top of a
der Durchmesser diameter	mountain)
(der Diameter)	der Glätſcher a glacier
der Eber boar (das Eberschwein,	(der Eisberg)
der Keiler)	der Gräuel object of abomi-
der Eifer zeal	nation (das Scheusal, der
der Eimer pail, bucket, (with one	Abſcheu)
der Efel disgust [handle]	der Glimmer the glimmer
der Engel angel	(der Schimmer)
der Enkel grandchild	der Griffel slate-pencil
der Erker balcon	the style (bot.), surg. in-
(der Balcon, der Altan)	strum.
der Eſel ass	der Groſchen 1¼ d. •
der Fächer fan (lady's)	der Gürtel girdle (for the
der Falter butterfly	waist)
(der Schmetterling)	der Gulden florin (der Florin)
der Farren bullock	der Hader strife, rag
(der Farre)	der Hafer oats
der Fiafer hackney-coach	der Hagel hail (die Schloßen pl.)
der Finger finger	der Hafen hook generally
der Flecken (der Fleck) spot,	(die Angel hook for fish-
stain	ing)
der Flecken country town	der Hamen draw-net
(das Landstädtchen)	der Hammel wether (der Schöps)
der Fliegel flail	das Hammelfleisch mutton
der Flügel wing	der Hamster hamster
der Frevel outrage	der Hebel the lever (die Winde-
(die Gewaltthätigkeit)	stange)

der Heller farthing	der Kolben log (of wood)
der Henkel handle of a basket	(der Klotz, das Scheit)
der Hieber broadsword (der	der Klöpfel club or mallet
Handdegen, der Schläger)	der Klöpfer knocker at the
der Himmel heaven	door
der Hebel plane (tool)	der Klumpen lump
der Höcker hump (der Buckel)	der Knäuel or Kläuel bottom
der Hoslunder elder (plant)	or clue on which something
(der Flieder)	is wound
der Hopfen hop (plant)	der Knebel thick stick
der Hügel hill	der Knochen bone
der Hummer lobster	der Knöchel ankle
der Hunger hunger	der Knollen knoll
der Jammer misery	der Knorpel cartilage, gristle
der Igel hedgehog	der Knorren knot (in wood)
der Ingwer ginger	der Knoten knot (a tie)
der Jubel jubilation, rejoicing	der Knüttel } thick stick
der Käfer beetle (the insect)	der Knüppel }
der Kaper privateer (captain)	der Köcher quiver
(das Kaperschiff the ship)	der Köder bait (die Lockspeise)
der Karpfen carp	der Körper body (der Leib)
der Karren cart (die Karre)	der Koffer coffer
der Kasten chest	der Kolben butt-end (of a gun)
der Kater male cat (gen. die	der Kreisel top (plaything)
Katze)	der Kringel cracknel
der Kegel cone (math.)	der Krüppel cripple
der Keiler boar (der Eber)	der Kuchen bun, cake
der Keller cellar	der Kübel tub (die Kufe)
der Kerker prison	der Kümmel caraway seed
der Kessel kettle	der Kummer sorrow
der Kiefer jaw	der Lappen rag (der Hader rag,
der Kittel frock of a peasant	tatters Lumpen, Fetzen pl.)
der Kitzel tickling	der Leisten last (for boots &c.)
der Schreibekitzel itch for	der Leuchter candlestick
writing	(der Lichthalter)
der Klepper nag	der Löffel spoon

der Mafel stain (on the character) fault or defect (der Flecken stain generally)	der Pfropfen cork of a bottle (der Pfropf, der Kork)
der Marder martin, weasel	der Priester priest
der Meißel chisel	der Prügel cudgel
der Mergel marl	der Pudel poodle
der Moder mould or soft mouldering earth	der Rachen jaws of a beast der Rachen des Todes oder der Hölle
der Mörder murderer	der Ränzel knapsack, (der Tornister soldier's knap- sack)
der Mörser mortar (cannon or vessel for bruising)	der Rahmen frame (of pictures)
der Mörtel mortar (cement)	der Rasen sward (grass)
der Münster minster	der Regen rain
der Rachen boat (der Kahn, das Boot)	der Reigen dance with music
der Nacken neck (of men and beasts) der Hals gen.	der Reiher heron
der Neger negro	der Riegel rail (of wood) or bolt to fasten with
der Norden north	der Riemen strap, thong
der Nutzen profit, advantage (der Vortheil)	der Rocker distaff (old distaff die Gunkel)
der Onkel uncle (der Oheim)	der Roggen rye
der Panzer coat of mail (das Panzerhemde)	der Rogen roe of fish
der Pfeffer pepper	der Rüssel trunk of an ele- phant
der Pfeiler pillar	der Säbel sabre
der Pinsel pencil (brush) der Einfaltspinsel the simpleton	der Sabber saliva, slaver (der Geifer)
der Plunder trumpery	der Säumer beast of burden or its keeper (das Lastthier)
der Pöbel populace, mob (die Plebs)	der Säufel gentle breeze
der Porter porter, beer	der Sandal sandal-wood (das Sandalholz)
der Posten post or situation, military post	der Schächer thief on the cross
der Pranger pillory (das Hals- eisen, die Schmachsäule)	der Schädel skull
	der Schämél, Schemel footstool bib. (die Fußbank gen.)

der Schatten shade	der Schwängel, Schwengel clapper (of a bell)
der Schauer shudder (from fear)	der Schwefel sulphur
der Schauer shudder (from cold)	der Schwindel dizziness
der Schauer shower	der Seckel shekel
der Scheffel bushel	der Segen blessing
der Scheitel top of the head, also the parting of the hair	der Seffel chair seat (der Stuhl)
der Schenkel thigh or ham	der Simpler simpleton (der Schafskopf)
der Scherwenzel knave when the best card	der Sfrupel scruple
der Schiefer slate (for roofs &c.)	der Sommer summer
der Schimmel, a white horse, mouldness, mildew, decay.	der Spargel asparagus
der Schimmer glimmer (der Glimmer)	der Sparren spar, rafter
der Schinken ham of smoked pig	der Spaten spade
der Schlägel mallet, bat (also leg of mutton &c. Keule)	der Speichel spittle
der Schleier veil	der Speicher granary (die Kornkammer)
der Schlingel knave (boy)	der Spiegel mirror
der Schlitten sledge or sleigh	der Spießer spike, nail
der Schlüssel key	der Sprengel, Kirchsprengel diocese (Diocese)
der Schlummer slumber	der Sprengel springe (die Dohne)
der Schmergel emery	der Strudel fountain, spring
der Schneider tailor	der Ständer an upright (der Posten)
der Schnitzer blunder (der Fehler, der Fehlgriff)	der Stapel stocks for a ship, staple (a mart)
der Schnitzel little slice	der Stecken stick
der Schnörkel flourish in writing	der Stempel stamp (for coin)
der Schnupfen cold, catarrh (die Erkältung)	der Stengel stalk (of a plant)
der Schober rick or stack	der Stichel graver, graving tool
der Schofel trash (der Schund)	der Stopfer stopper generally
der Schrecken terror (das Entsetzen)	der Stöpsel or Stöpfel stopper of bottles

der Stollen calker of a horse- shoe	der Weiser hand of clock &c. (der Zeiger)
der Streifen strip (der Streif)	der Weizen wheat
der Strudel whirlpool	der Westen west
der Stüber stiver	der or die Wimpel pennon, pendant or flag
der Stummel stump (remnant) (der Stumpf gen.)	der Winkel angle
der Tadel blame, censure (die Rüge)	der Winter winter
der Taumel reeling, innoxica- tion from passion &c.	der Wipfel top of a tree
der Teller plate (a dish)	der Wirbel whirlpool, whirl, also the top of the head
der Tempel temple	der Wispel measure of corn
der Teufel devil	der Wucher usury (die Wucherei)
der Thaler dollar	der Zauber charm, spell
der Tiegel crucible der Schmelztiegel	der Zeiger index of a dial
der Tiger tiger (das Tigerthier)	der Zentner hundred weight or Centner
der Titel title of a book, rank &c.	der Zettel note (das Briefchen)
der Tölpel dolt clodpole (der Schöps)	der Zider cider (der Apfelwein)
der Triangel triangle (das Dreieck)	der Ziegel brick (der Mauerziegel)
der Triller quaver (of the voice)	der Zipfel tip (die Spitze, der Punkt)
der Tropfen drop	der Zirkel circle (der Kreis, Umkreis)
der Tummler tumbler das Taumelglas	der Zobel sable
der Wagen carriage (for goods) das Fuhrwerk, der Karren	der Zügel rein, bridle (der Zaum)
der Wandel, der Lebenswandel walk or conduct of life .	der Zunder tinder
der Wechsel change, bill	der Zweifel doubt
der Weiher pond (der Fischteich)	der Zwicfel clock of a stocking
der Weiler hamlet (der Hain)	der Zwinger prison (for beasts) (der Bären-, Löwenzwinger)

Vocabulary of Adjectives.

A. List of Adjectives which modify *a*, *o* and *u* in the comparative and superlative: \

alt old	jung young	roth red
arg evil	falt cold	ſcharf sharp
arm poor	flug clever	ſchmal small
dumm dull*	franſ sick	ſchwarz black
fromm pious*	frumm crooked	ſchwach weak
grob rude, coarse	kurz short [bent*	ſtarr strong
groß great	lang long	warm warm
hart hard	nahe near*	
hoch high	naß wet*	

B. List of Adjectives

containing *a*, *o* and *u*, but not modifying the vowel in the comparative and superlative:

blaß pale*	knapp scarce, scanty	ſchlaff loose, lax
bunt variegated	lahm lame	ſchlanſ slender
ſadetasteless, insipid	laß weary	ſchroff precipitous,
ſahl faded, fallow	loſe loose	ſtarr rigid [rough
ſalb pale, yellow	matt tired	ſtolz proud
ſlach flat	morſch brittle, rotten	ſtraff tight
ſroh cheerful, glad	nackt naked	ſtumm dumb
gerade straight	glatt flat	ſtumpf blunt
geſund healthy*	plumpheavy, unviel-	toll mad
glatt smooth	raſch quick [dy	voll full
hohl hollow	roh raw, rude	wahr true
hold favourable	rund round	zahm tame
ſahl bare	ſacht gentle, slow	zart tender.*
ſarg stingy*	ſanft soft, gentle	
ſlar clear	ſatt satisfied, satiated	

* These are found with both forms in the comparative and superlative: as, fromm, frommer and frömmen &c.

List C.

Supplementary List of Simple Adjectives.

Blau blue	gelb yellow	recht right
bieder true	gemein common	reich rich
bitter bitter	genau exact	reif ripe
böse bad, wicked	gerecht just	rein pure
braun brown	geschickt clever	sauer sour
breit wide	gleich like, equal	sauber clean
derb strong, robust	grau grey	schlecht bad
dicht thick, close	heiser hoarse	schlimm bad
dick thick, big	heiß warm	schnell quick
dünn thin	heiter cheerful	schön beautiful
dreist bold, impetuous	hell light, clear	schwer heavy
düster gloomy, dull	hübsch pretty	schwül sultry
dunkel dark	jäh steep	selten rare
eben flat	keusch chaste	sicher secure
echt veritable	klein small	still still
edel noble	kraus crisp	streng strict
eigen own, peculiar	kühl cool	süß sweet
eitel vain	kühn bold	tapfer brave
enge small, narrow	laut loud	taub deaf
ernst serious	leer empty	theuer dear
faul lazy	leicht easy	tief deep
feig cowardly	leise low, not loud	treu true
fein fine	mager lean	trocken dry
fest fast	milde mild	trübe troubled, not
fett fat	müde tired	übel evil [clear
feucht damp	neu new	weich soft
finster dark	öde deserted	wild wild
frsch impudent	offen open	weise wise
frei free	quer cross	weiß white
frisch fresh	rauh rough	weit far, wide.

List D. Derivative Adjectives.

Derivative adjectives may be formed by means of the following affixes.

Affix.	Meaning.	Examples.
1. <i>bar</i>	bearing able	<i>fruchtbar</i> fruitful <i>wunderbar</i> wondrous <i>eßbar</i> eatable <i>sichtbar</i> visible
2. <i>en</i> <i>ern</i>	made of made of	<i>wollen</i> woollen <i>eisern</i> made of iron
3. <i>haft</i>	having	<i>plauderhaft</i> talkative, loquacious <i>mannhaft</i> manful, manly
4. <i>icht</i>	like	<i>kupfericht</i> copper-coloured, cop-
5. <i>ig</i>	abounding in	<i>holzig</i> woody [perlike <i>freudig</i> joyful, joyous
6. <i>ich</i>	belonging to national contempt	<i>himmlisch</i> heavenly <i>englisch</i> English (also angelic) <i>kindisch</i> puerile, childish
7. <i>lich</i>	like somewhat able to be	<i>kindlich</i> childlike <i>bräunlich</i> brownish <i>lieblich</i> lovable, lovely
8. <i>los</i>	loose, free from	<i>schlaflos</i> sleepless
9. <i>sam</i>	full of, possessing a quality	<i>einsam</i> lonesome <i>furchtsam</i> fearful, timorous
10. <i>voll</i>	full	<i>freudevoll</i> joyful.

Distinguish between *hölzern*, made of wood, wooden; *wollen*
made of wool, woollen

holzig, *wollig* abounding in wood or wool;
woody, woolly

holzigt, *wolligt* like wood or wool

also between

männlich manly (in a good sense)

männisch affecting manliness (bad sense).

Alphabetical List of Strong Verbs.

N.B. *When the vowel in the imperfect subjunctive differs from that of the imperfect indicative, it is given in brackets.*

Backen, bäckst, bäckt	buß (rare)	gebacken	bake
or backst, backt	backte		
befehlen, befehlst,	befahl (ö)	befohlen	command
	[befiehlt		
befleißten (sich)	befleiß	beflissen	apply one's
beginnen	begann (ö)	begonnen	begin [self
beißen	biß	gebissen	bite
bergen, birgst, birgt	barg	geborgen	hide
bersten, birstest, birst	barst, borst	geborsten	burst
bewegen, bewegst,	bewog	bewogen	induce
	[bewegt		
biegen	bog	gebogen	bend
bieten (verbieten)	bot	geboten	bid, offer
binden	band	gebunden	bind
bitten	bat	gebeten	beg
blasen, bläsest, bläst	blies	geblasen	blow
bleiben	blieb	geblieben	remain
(bleichen act.	bleichte	gebleicht	bleach)
erbleichen, verbleichen	=blich	=blichen	1. grow pale,
braten, brätst, brät	briet	gebraten	roast [2. fade
brechen, brichst, bricht	brach	gebrochen	break
brennen, brennst,	brannte (e)	gebrannt	burn
	[brennt		
bringen	brachte	gebracht	bring
denken, denkst, denkt	dachte	gedacht	think
dingen	(dung, dingte)	gedungen	bargain, hire
dreschen, dreschest,	drosch	gedroschen	thrash
	[driecht		
dringen	drang	gedrungen	urge, press
empfehlen, empfehlst,	empfehl (ö)	empfohlen	recommend
	[empfehlt		
erfüren	erfor	erforen	choose
erlöschen, erlischest,	erlosch	erloschen	become
	[erlischt		[extinct

erschrecken, erschrickst	erschraf	erschrocken	be frightened
essen, issest, ißt	aß	gegessen	eat
fahren, fährst, fährt	fuhr	gefahren	drive in a vehicle
fallen, fällst, fällt	fiel	gefallen	fall
fangen, fängst, fängt	fang	gefangen	catch
fechten, fichtst, ficht	focht	gefochten	fight
finden	fand	gefunden	find
flechten, flichtst, flicht	flocht	geflochten	plait, twine
fliegen	flog	geflogen	fly
fliehen	floh	geflohen	flee
fließen	floß	geflossen	flow
fressen, frissest, frißt	fraß	gefressen	eat (as a beast)
frieren	fror	gefroren	freeze
gähren	gohr	gegohren	ferment
gebären, gebierst,	gebar	geboren	bring forth
	[gebiert		
geben, gibst, giebt	gab	gegeben	give
gedeihen	gedieh	gediehen	thrive, prosper
gehen, gehst, geht	ging	gegangen	go
gelingen, es gelingt	gelang	gelungen	succeed
gelten, giltst, gilt	galt	gegolten	be worth
genesen, genesest,	genas	genesen	recover
	[geneßt		
genießen	genoß	genossen	enjoy
geschehen, es geschieht	geschah	geschehen	happen
gewinnen	gewann (ö)	gewonnen	gain
gießen	goß	gegossen	pour
gleich	glich	geglichen	be like to
vergleichen act			compare
gleiten	glitt	geglitten	glide
glimmen	glomm	geglommen	glimmer
graben, gräbst, gräbt	grub	gegraben	dig
greifen	griff	gegriffen	grasp, seize
halten, hältst, hält	hielt	gehalten	hold
hängen, hängst, hängt	hing	gehangen	hang
hauen, hauest, hauet	hieb	gehauen	hew
heben, hebst, hebt	hob (hub)	gehoben	heave, lift

heißen	hieß	geheißen	call
helfen, hilffst, hilft	half(ã or ü)	geholfen	help
kennen, kennst, kennt	kante (e)	gekant	know
klimmen	klomm	geklommen	climb
klingen	klang	geklingen	sound, ring
kneifen	kniff	gekniffen	pinch
kommen, kommst,	kam	gekommen	come
	[kommt	imp. komm	
	(kömmt, kömmt)		
kriechen	froch	gefrochen	creep
laden, lädst, lädt	lud	geladen	load
	(ladest, ladet)		
lassen, lässest, läßt	ließ	gelassen	let or leave
laufen, läufst, läuft,	lief	gelaufen	run
	or laufst, lauft		
leiden	litt	gelitten	suffer
leihen	lieh	geliehen	lend, borrow
lesen, liesest, liest	las	gelesen	read
liegen	lag	gelegen	lie, rest upon
lügen	log	gelogen	lie, tell a lie
mahlen, mahlst, mahlt	mahlte	gemahlen	grind
meiden	mied	gemieden	avoid
melken	molk or W.	gemolken or W.	milk
messen, missest, mißt	maß	gemessen	measure
nehmen, nimmst,	nahm	genommen	take
	[nimmt		
nennen, nennst, nennt	nannte (e)	genannt	name
pfeifen	pfiff	gepfiffen	whistle
pflegen, pflegst, pflegt	pflog or W.	gepflogen or W.	take care of
preisen	pries	gepriesen	praise, extol
quellen, quillst, quillt	quoll	gequollen	spring forth, well
rathen, räthst, räth	rieth	gerathen	advise
reiben	rieb	gerieben	rub
reißen	riß	gerissen	tear
reiten	ritt	geritten	ride
rennen, rennst, rennt	rannte (e)	gerannt	run
riechen,	roch	gerochen	smell

ringen	rang	gerungen	wrestle
rinnen	rann	geronnen	run (of fluids)
rufen, ruffst, ruft	rief	gerufen	call
salzen, salzest, salzt	salzte	gesalzen or W.	salt
saufen, säuffst, säuft	soff	gesoffen	drink (as beasts)
saugen, saugst, saugt	sog	gesogen	suck
schaffen, schafftst, schafft	schuf	geschaffen	create
(schaffen	schaffte	geschafft	procure)
schallen, es schallt	scholl	geschollen	to sound
	schallte	geschallt	
scheiden	schied	geschieden	part, separate
scheinen	schien	geschienen	shine, appear
schelten, schiltst, schilt	schalt	gescholten	scold
scheren, schierst, schiert	schor	geschoren	shear
schieben	schob	geschoben	shove, push
schießen	schöß	geschossen	shoot
schinden	schindete	geschunden	flay
schlafen, schläfst, schläft	schlieff	geschlafen	sleep
schlagen, schlägst, schlägt	schlug	geschlagen	beat
schleichen	schlich	geschlichen	sneak
schleifen	schliff	geschliffen	grind
schließen	schloß	geschlossen	close, conclude
schlingen	schlang	geschlungen	wind, twine
schmeißen	schmiß	geschmissen	fling
schmelzen, schmilzest, schmolz	schmolz	geschmolzen	melt, neut.
[schmilzt	schmelzte	geschmolzt	melt, act.
schneiden	schnitt	geschnitten	cut
schrauben, schraubst	schrob or W.	geschroben or W.	screw
schreiben	schrieb	geschrieben	write
schreien	schrie	geschrieen	cry aloud
schreiten	schritt	geschritten	stride
schwären, schwärst, schwor	schwor	geschworen	fester
[schwärt			
schweigen	schwieg	geschwiegen	be silent
schwellen, schwillst, schwoll	schwoll	geschwollen	swell, neut.
[schwillt	schwellte	geschwellt	swell, act.
schwimmen	schwamm	geschwommen	swim

ſchwinden	ſchwand	geſchwunden	vanish
ſchwingen	ſchwang	geſchwungen	swing, soar
ſchwören	ſchwor	geſchworen	take an oath,
	(ſchwur)		
ſehen, ſiehſt, ſieht	ſah	geſehen	see [swear
ſenden, ſendeſt, ſendet	ſandte (e)	geſandt	send
ſieden	ſott	geſotten	seethe, boil
ſingen	ſang	geſungen	sing
ſinken	ſank	geſunken	sink
ſinnen	ſann	geſonnen	meditate
ſißen	ſaß	geſeßen	sit
ſpalten, ſpalteſt	ſpaltete	geſpalten or W.	split
ſpeien	ſpie	geſpieen	spit
ſpinnen	ſpinn (ö)	geſponnen	spin
ſprechen, ſpricht, ſpricht	ſprach	geſprochen	speak
ſprießen	ſproß	geſproffen	sprout
ſpringen	ſprang	geſprungen	spring
ſtechen, ſticheſt, ſticht	ſtach	geſtochen	sting
ſtehen, ſteheſt, ſteht	ſtand	geſtanden	stand
ſtehlen, ſtiehleſt, ſtiehlt	ſtahl	geſtohlen	steal
ſteigen	ſtieg	geſtiegen	mount
ſterben, ſtirbeſt, ſtirbt	ſtarb (ü)	geſtorben	die
ſtieben	ſtob	geſtoben	fly like dust
ſtinken	ſtank	geſtunken	stink
ſtoßen, ſtößeſt, ſtößt	ſtieß	geſtoßen	push
ſtreichen	ſtrich	geſtrichen	stroke
ſtreiten	ſtritt	geſtritten	contend
thun, thuſt, thut	that	gethan	do
tragen, trägeſt, trägt	trug	getragen	carry
treffen, trifft, trifft	traf	getroffen	hit
treiben	trieb	getrieben	drive
treten, trittſt, tritt	trat	getreten	tread
triefen	troff	getroffen or W.	drip
trinken	trank	getrunken	drink
trügen	trog	getrogen	deceive
verderben, verderbeſt,	verdarb (ü)	verdorben	spoil
	[verdirbt		

verdrießen	verdroß	verdrossen	vex, annoy
vergessen vergiſſeſt,	vergaß	vergeſſen	forget
	[vergißt]	.	
verlieren	verlor	verloren	lose
wachſen, wächſeſt	wuchs	gewachſen	grow
	[wächſt]		
waſchen, wäſcheſt	wuſch	gewaſchen	wash
	[wäſcht]		
wägen	wog	gewogen	weigh
weben, webſt, webt	wob	gewoben	weave
weichen	wich	gewichen	yield
weiſen	wieß	gewieſen	show, direct
wenden, wendeſt,	wandte (e)	gewandt	turn
	[wendet]		[neut. and refl.]
werben, wirbſt, wirbt	warb (ä, ü)	geworben	sue, enlist
werfen, wirfft, wirft	warf	geworfen	throw
wiegen	wog	gewogen	weigh
winden	wand	gewunden	wind
wiſſen, ich weiß, weißt,	wußte	gewußt	know
	[weiß]		
zeihen	zieh	geziehen	accuse
ziehen	zog	gezogen	draw
zwingen	zwang	gezwungen	compel.

Appendix.

On the Gender and Declension of Foreign Nouns.

The following classified lists contain, it is hoped, all the foreign nouns, about which the student is likely to be in any doubt. We omit personal appellatives, which follow the weak form, the names of minerals and of the months, which are masculine in gender and strong in form, also the weak feminines included in the following general rule:

The nouns in *ät*, *ion* and *if*,
ie, *ur* and *z* are feminines weak;
except *der Purpur*, *Scorpion*,
das Benefiz, *Genie*, alone.

Foreign names of things, when masc. or neuter, are, as a rule, strong in declension and not modified in the plural. Any irregular form will be given.

I. The Vowel Terminations.

A.

Most nouns are feminine in *a*:
die Soda, *Prosa*, *Algebra*¹;
Madeira, *Malaga*², like *Wein*,
Marjala too, are masculine.
But neuter: *Sopha*, *Podagra*,
*das Passa*³, *Zebra*, nouns in *ma*⁴.

1. Feminines in *a* are: *die Algebra*, *die Armada*, *die China*, *die Cholera*, *die Firma* (pl. *en*), *die Fortuna* (g. *s* or *ens*, no pl.), *die Naphtha*, *die Platina*, *die Polka*, *die Prosa*, *die Reseda*, (*mignonette*), *die Soda*, *die Sierra*, *die Siesta*, *die Stola* (pl. *en*), *die Summa*, *die Valuta* (pl. *ten*) value in commerce, *die Vulgata* (the vulgate bible); 2. gen. *is*; these are masculine, meaning wine, because *Wein* is masc.; 3. *Sopha*, *Zebra* make the gen. and pl. *s*. *Passa* passover, and *Podagra* gout, gen. *s*; 4. the nouns in *ma* make the gen. in *s*; the pl. varies. They are: *das Asthma* (no pl.), *das Dogma* (pl. *men*), *das Drama* (pl. *s* or *en*) *das Klima* (pl. *Klimata*), *das Komma* (pl. *s* or *Kommata*), *das Lama* (pl. *s*), *das Miasma*, (pl. *men*), *das Panorama* (pl. *s*), *das Phlegma*, *das Prisma* (pl. *en*), *das Schema* (pl. *s* or *Schemata*), *das Thema* (pl. *Themata*).

E, S and Y.

E mostly feminine: die Idee¹;
 except der Kaffee, Käse, Thee²;
 das Interesse³, Renommee⁴,
 das Recipisse⁵, Kanapee⁶,
 Pianoforte, Alkali,
 Carré, Finale⁷, Lee the lee⁸,
 Conclave, Breve⁹, das Parterre¹⁰;
 die Jury¹¹, Gummi mostly der¹².

1. Pl. Ideen regular; 2. g. s; 3. interest; g. s, pl. en; 4. re-
 nown; 5. receipt for money (der Empfangsschein, die Quittung);
 6. sofa g. and pl. s; 7. the end of a piece of music; 8. das Lee
 Engl. or Dutch; 9. pl. s, a writ, pope's brief, also a breve in music;
 10. pit of a theatre, g. s pl. Parterre; 11. das Schwurgericht, die
 Geschwornen; 12. gum, india rubber, gen. and pl. s, sometimes
 neuter.

D¹.

Das Porto², Tempo³, Folio,
 das Echo, Motto, Agio⁴,
 das Intermezzo⁵, Solo⁵, Trio,
 but masculine: rivers, der Ohio,
 der Douro, Lego, Drinoko⁷;
 der Tschako⁸, der Kakao cocoa,
 der Stucco, Indigo, Tornado,
 Sirocco, Saldo⁹, Scudo¹⁰, Sago.

1. Nouns in o make the genitive in s, and also the plural
 in s, if there is one; 2. postage; 3. time in music (der Takt);
 4. agio, the exchange on foreign money; 5. pl. Intermezzos and
 Intermezzi, interlude in a play; 6. pl. Solos or Soli; 7. other
 names of rivers in o: der Unio, der Arno, der Po, der Kubico;
 8. soldier's cap; 9. the balance of an account; 10. an Italian coin.

II. The Liquid Terminations: unaccented el, en, er¹.

The masculines come first: der Mafel²,
 Carbunkel, uproar der Spektakel³,
 der Münster⁴, Tempel, Subel⁵, Aether⁶,
 Zinnober⁷, Zucker⁸, der Salpeter.
 der Kampher, Panther, Tiger, Biber⁹,
 Cylinder, Anker, der Kaliber,
 Pantoffel¹⁰, Seckel¹¹, der Tornister¹²,
 der Niemen, Niger, Dnieper, Dniester,

der Pregel¹³, Porter, Perpendikel,
Charakter, Pfalter, der Artifel,
der Konventikel, der Piafter,
der Scrupel, Mörtel¹⁴, der Canaster¹⁵,
Triangel, Zirkel, der Kalender,
der, das Katheder either gender,
der Dia= Chrono= Thermo= meter,
but der, das Meter, Barometer¹⁶.

die Tutel¹⁷, Cymbel, die Partikel,
Metapher, Spatel¹⁸, die Matrifel¹⁹,
die Oder, Weser, Mosel, Tiber²⁰,
das Tiber fever, thread die Tiber,
die Kanzel²¹, Vesper²², die Parabel,
Epistel, Scrofel²³, die Vocabel.

Das Scepter, das Kapitel²⁴, Tafel²⁵,
das Konventikel, Tabernakel,
das Banner, Carcer²⁶, das Pronomen,
Examen²⁷, das Exempel, Dnen,
Theater, Möbel²⁸, das Mirakel,
Register, Pendel²⁹, das Drakel.

1. The declension of these nouns is regular; 2. means a stain on the character; 3. when neuter, das Spektakel (French) means a spectacle; 4. also neuter, a professor's chair; 5. a rejoicing; 6. ether: 7. cinnabar; 8. sugar; 9. beaver; 10. slipper pl. Pantoffeln; 11. the Jewish shekel; 12. knapsack; 13. names of rivers; 14. mortar; 15. superior kind of tobacco, canister tobacco; 16. der, das Meter or Metre and Barometer are both masc. and neut.; 17. tutelage, guardianship; 18. spatula; also a stirring or scraping stick; 19. university register; Einschreibung in die Matrifel, matriculation; 20. names of rivers; 21. pulpit; 22. vespers; 23. scrofula; 24. chapter; 25. tackle of ships; 26. the place of confinement at schools and universities; 27. examination; 28. piece of furniture, pl. Möbeln furniture; 29. pendulum.

III. The Liquid Terminations: **Œ**, **Œ**, **Œ**, having the last syllable accented, and **Œ**.

Accented Œ, and final Œ,
are neuter: as, das Theorem.

Masculine Exceptions ending in N and L.

Der Psalm¹, Islam, Rum, Vitriol,
der Archipel, Canal², der Pol,
der Senegal, der Nil, der Shawl,
Flanell, Juwel³, Krystall, Choral,
der Styl, Scandal, Vocal, Plural.

Feminine Exceptions in L and M.

But feminine: die Moral⁴, die Form⁵,
die Krim⁶, die Null⁷, die Bill⁸, die Norm⁹.

1. G. s pl. Psalmen; 2. gen. s pl. Canäle; 3. gen. s pl. Juwelen; 4. system of morals, ethics; 5. weak decl.; 6. the Crimea; 7. a nullity pl. en; 8. bill in Parliament (English word); 9. rule, model, weak decl.

List of Neuter Nouns in L.

Das Duell, Fossil (pl. ien), das Ideal, der und das Intervall (especially in music), das Journal, das Kamisol waistcoat, g. s pl. Kamisöler; das Kapital (pl. Kapitalien in commerce, Kapitälér in architecture); der und das Karneval (C), das Kastell, das Koncil (pl. ien), das Metall, das Mineral (g. s pl. ien), das Modell, das Monopol, das Original, das Oval, das Pedal, das Pistol, das Portal, das Profil profile, das Protokoll, das Quartal the quarter of a year, das Regal royal prerogative, (pl. Regalien regalia), das Ritual, das Serail seraglio (French, pl. s), das Signal, das Spital or Hospital (pl. äler), das Terzerol pocket-pistol, das Tribunal.

List of Neuter Nouns in M.

Das Adverbium (pl. ien), das Atom, das Axiom, das Centrum (pl. Centra or Centren), das Collegium 1. board or college of men, 2. lectures at college (pl. Collegien, sometimes Collegia), das Datum pl. Data data or facts, Daten dates, das Evangelium (pl. a or en) gospel, das Extrem, das Futurum or das Futur (pl. a or e) das Idiom, das Imperfectum or das Imperfekt (pl. a or e), das Individuum (pl. -duen), das Jubiläum (pl. -läen), das Limitum limit in commerce, das Metrum (pl.

a or en) metre of verse, das Ministerium (pl. -rien), das Passivum (g. s, pl. a or e; Passiva means also liabilities, Activa means assets), das Phantom, das Problem, das Programm, das Publikum, das Punktum, das Sekulum century (pl. Sekula), das Studium (g. s, pl. -dien), das Stipendium (g. s, pl. -dia or -dien), das Substantivum or Substantiv (pl. ive), das Symptom, das Synonym, das System, das Territorium (g. s, pl. -rien), das Theorem; das Universum (no pl.), das Verbum (pl. Verba or Verben), das Votum (pl. Vota) vote.

N accented.

An masculine¹: as, der Orkan,
but das Organ, das Porzellan.
Der Ofen², Termin³, Ruin,
Jasmin⁴, Karmin, der Serpentin,
but die Doctrin, die Disciplin,
die Offizin⁵, die Medizin,
das Tambourin, das Magazin,
und das Belin, das Stearin⁶.
das Lexicon, das Pantheon,
das Kolon, das Prognostikon⁷,
der Ton, Salon, Canton, Kattun⁸,
der Thron, Balcon, Ballon balloon,
Sermon, Carton⁹, der Scorpion,
die Garnison, Person, Schwadron.
Rivers in n are masculine:
der Don, der Main, der Inn, der Rhein.

1. der Koran, der Enzian gentian, der Fasan pheasant, der Kaftan a turkish gown, der Laberdan Aberdeen fish, der Orkan hurricane, der Ozean (c), der Pavian baboon, der Pelikan, der Turban, der Safran saffron, der Sopran (soprano), der Vatikan; 2. alcove; 3. term; 4. jessamine; 5. workshop; 6. stearine, tallow; 7. prognostic; 8. cotton; 9. cartoon.

N accented.

Nr neuter: as, das Dromedar,
das Formular, das Exemplar¹,
so das Comtoir², Salair³, Budoir⁴ (oa),
der Altar⁵, Nectar, Singular;

ier neuter: das Klavier, Papier,
so das Visir, but die Manier⁶,
der Radir⁷, der Vampir⁸, Zephyr;
or masculine: as, der Humor⁹,
der Marmor¹⁰, Ventilator, Chlor¹¹;
ur feminine: as, die Figur,
der Purpur¹², but die Tour, die Cour.

1. A sample, specimen; 2. Comptoir or Contór g. s pl. s
or e counting house; 3. Salair or Salár g. s pl. e, salary;
4. boudoir, lady's dressing room; 5. Ustar g. s pl. äre; 6. Visir
g. s pl. e visor; Manier pl. en manner; 7. astronomical term;
8. or Vampyr; 9. Humór wit, Humór moisture; 10. marble
11. chlorine; 12. g. s purple.

IV. Nouns ending in S, Sz, and X.

Except das Genus, nouns in us¹
are masculine: der Portifus;
der Mais, Koloß, Kompaß, Atlas,
der Cours, Concurs, Impuls, Ufas,
der Küraß, Saraß, der Service,
der Ibis, Phönix, der Anis,
der Styr, der Index, der Regreß,
der Paß, der Puls, Profesß, Prozeß.

Das Pathos, Krucifix the cross,
das Präsens, Paradies, Chaos,
Logis, Glacis, Rhinoceros,
die Syntax, Ananas, die Krafis,
Synopsis, Thesis, Praxis, Basis.

Die Ananas the pine apple, der Anglicismus (pl. ismen),
der Atlas (g. asses pl. ffe or Atlanten), die Basis (pl. Basen-
base), das Chaos, der Cours course of exchange (g. es d. and
pl. e), das Krucifix the holy cross, der Cultus worship (pl.
Cultus or e), der Cursus course of lectures (pl. Cursus or
Curse), der Custos keeper, guardian, (pl. Custoden), der Genius
genius, guardian angel, (pl. Genien), das Genus (pl. Genera)

1. Nouns in us are unchanged in the genitive.

genus, gender, das Glaciſ French mil. term, pronounced *Glacih*, der Helleniſmus (pl. iſmen), Jeſus Chriſtus, gen. Jeſu Chriſti, dat. Jeſu Chriſto, acc. Jeſum Chriſtum, der Impuſ (pl. e), der Index (gen. Indiciſ, pl. Indices), der Koloß (pl. ßen) colossus, der Konkuruſ bankruptcy, das Kraſiſ gram. term, die Kriſiſ or Kriſe (pl. en), der Küräſ (g. ſſeſ pl. ſſe) cuirass, das Logiſ lodging, der Luruſ luxury (no pl.), der Moſchuſ muſk (no pl.) der Pathoſ pathos, das Paradiſ (gen. eſ d. and pl. e), der Phönix (gen. eſ or deſ Phönix, pl. e), der Porticuſ (pl. Porticuſ or Porticuſen) portico, das Präſenſ (pl. Präſentia), die Praxiſ practice, practical knowledge, der Profeß profeſſion of vows made by Catholic orders (g. eſ pl. e), der Prozeß (g. eſ pl. e) lawsuit, der Pulſ. (g. eſ pl. e), der Receß recess, der Regreß (law term) redress, remedy, der Revereſ (g. eſ pl. e) reverse, das Rhinoceroſ (pl. oſſe), der Rituſ rite (pl. ten), der Saraß (g. eſ pl. e) sabre, der und das Service ſervice of china, plate &c., der Spirituſ ſpirit in chem., der Spondeuſ, (pl. deen) spondee, die Sphinx the sphinx, der Stoiciſmus, der Styx river in the infernal regions, die Synopſiſ, die Syntax, der Terroriſmus (pl. iſmen), die Theſiſ (pl. Theſen), der Trochäuſ (pl. Trochäen) trochee, der Turkiß, (g. ſſeſ, pl. ſſe) turquois, der Turnuſ rotation, der Ukäſ (g. eſ pl. e; or die Ukäſe, pl. en) ukas, der Zodiacuſ zodiak.

V. Nouns ending in **ſ** accented.

Most nouns in **ſ**¹ (not ant and aſt)² are neuter, when the accent's laſt.

Masculine Exceptions ending in ſ.

Except der Dialekt, Accent,
der Teint³, Skorbut⁴, der Taft⁵, Moment⁶,
Transport, Import⁷, der Orient⁸,
der Aſpekt, Euphrat, Hellespont,
Planet, Comet⁹, der Horizont,
Advent, Convent, Tumult, Senat,
Sabbat, Drnat¹⁰, der Automat¹¹,
der Reſt¹², Rabatt¹³, Tribut, Profit,

Contract, der Banferott¹⁴, Credit,
 der Punkt, der Text, Traktat¹⁵, Protest,
 Asphalt, Magnet, Conflict, Arrest,
 Affect¹⁶, Instinkt, der Appetit,
 Extract, Batist¹⁷, der Zoophyt.

1. Foreign names of things in t form the genitive regularly in s or es, and the plural in e; when otherwise formed, these parts are given; 2. foreign nouns in ant and ast are masculine: der Consonant (weak decl.), der Damast damask g. es; 3. complexion, g. and pl. s; 4. scurvy; 5. tact, time or bar in music; 6. moment, or momentum impulse; 7. g. s, pl. Importen; also, Exporten; 8. the East; 9. der Planet and der Comet take en throughout; 10. state robes, solemn vestments; 11. automaton; 12. rest, remainder; 13. discount, abatement; 14. bankruptcy; 15. treatise; 16. feeling, emotion; 17. cambric, so named from its first maker Batist de Cambray.

List of Neuter Nouns in T.

Das Alphabet, das Argument, das Attentat (attempt), das Attestat testimony, das Ballet, das Billet, das Certificat, das Cölibat, das Complot plot, conspiracy, das Concept draught or sketch, das Concert, das Deficit, das Defret, das Deputat allowance for the poor, das Duplikat, das Edikt, das Element, das Format size of a book, der und das Habit dress, das Indigenat naturalisation, das Indossement indorsement, das Injekt (pl. en), das Inserat insertion, das Institut, das Instrument, das Interdikt, das Kabinet, das Kabriolet, das Kalifat, das Karat, das Konfekt confectionary, das Konfordat, das Konjulat, das Konvolut bundle, heterogeneous mixture, das Legat legacy, das Majorat right of primogeniture, das Mandat, das Manifest, das Manuscript, das Marquisat, das Minaret (pl. Minarette), das Monument, das Noviciat (3), das Ornament, das Packet, das Pamphlet, das Parlament, das Pastorat, das Patent, das Patriarchat, das Patronat, das Perfekt, das Pergament parchment, das Plakat placard, das Pontifikat, das Portrait, das Postulat, das Prädikat, das Primat, das Priorat, das Produkt (produce), das Projekt, das Prozent (c), das Quadrat, das Quart, das Recept, das Regiment (governments Regimente, regiments Regimenten), das Reglement (pron. as in

French), das Rektorat, das Requisit, das Rescript, das Resultat, das Sakrament, das Schaffot scaffold, das Sekretariat, das Signalement (French) g. and pl. s, description in passport, for police &c., das Skelett, (g. s pl. e) skeleton, das Sonnet sonnet (g. s pl. Sonnette), das Sorbet sherbet, das Sortiment retail book trade (g. s pl. e), das Statut (g. s pl. en), das Supplement (g. s pl. e), das Supremat, das Surrogat succedaneum, das Tamburet (g. s pl. Tamburette), das Talent, das Tapet, das Temperament, das Traktament, das Triumvirat.

VI. Other Terminations (mostly masculine)
log, graph, ach, af, scop, iv &c.

Masculines: all in log and graph¹:

der Dialog, der Telegraph,

and those in end and phthong and cord:

der Dividend, Diphthong, Accord,

der Scharlach², Almanach, Taback,

das Schach (or der)³, das Salmiak⁴,

der Frank, Tarif, der Punsch, Syrup,

der Pomp, Galopp, Triumph, der Klub⁵,

der Apostroph, der Park⁶, Zenith,

der Leopard¹, der Zoolith,

der Lech, der Pruth und der Polyp¹.

But neuter these: das Kap⁵, Princip⁷,

das Horoscop, das Microscop,

so all the rest that end in scop,

and most in iv: as, das Archiv,

das Adjectiv, das Substantiv;

but cases, moods, degrees in iv

are masculine: as, der Genitiv.

1. en throughout; 2. scarlet; 3. chess; 4. sal-ammoniac;
 5. g. and pl. s; 6. g. s pl. s and e; 7. g. s pl. ien. The declension of the words not numbered follows the usual strong form: as, der Dialog g. s or es, dat. and pl. e.

Index.

Absolute Clause 186. **Accent** 3. **Accusative in adverbial Clauses** 197. **Acc. and dat. after verbs** 197. **Acc. and gen. after verbs** 200. **Addition** 137. **Adjectives** 45, used attributively 45, preceded by articles 45, 46. **Adverbial Clauses** 197, of place 172, 188, of time 173, 188, 209, of manner and intensity 174, 189. **Adverbial Phrases** 167, 171. **Adverbs** 140, lists 143. **Adverbs used as connective words** 160. **Against** 133. **All** all 70. **Along** 134. **Alphabet** 1. **Als ob, als wenn** 175, 189. **An** 200, 201, 208, 209, 214. **Anapaestic Verse** 218. **Under** 74. **Anticipation of, in,** 135. **Any** 70. **Apposition** 171. **Arrangement of words** 163, 164, 169. **Article** 8, 15, 193; omission of article 194; article with abstract nouns 194. **Attribute** 164, 165, 170; **attributive genitive** 171; **attributive sentence** 172. **Auf** 201, 202, 208, 209, 211. **Auxiliary verbs of tense** 90, of mood 94. **Away** 134.

Back 136. **Before** 135. **Behind** 136. **Be** 124. **Bei** 134, 208, 210, 212, 214. **Bindewörter** 158. **Binnen** 210. **Bis** 189, 211. **Both** 74. **By** 135.

Cardinal numbers 65. **Cause** 176, 189, 211. **Cessation** 138. **Combinations of prepositions** 156. **Comparison of Adjectives** 48, of adverbs 142. **Compound Verbs** 124. **Complement of the predicate** 163. **Complex Sentence** 187. **Compound verbs** 124. **Concession** 176. **Condition** 177, 190. **Conjugation** 78, of regular verb 84, of irregular verb 111. **Conjunctions** 158, list 187, distinguished from **Connective Adverbs** 160, 161. **Consequence** 175. **Con-**

struction of sentences 163. Continuance 138. Co-ordinative Conjunctions 187. Copula 170.

Da 134. **Da** when 188, **da** since 189, **da** combined with prepositions 158. **Dabei** 134. **Dactylic** verse 217. **Dagegen** 133. **Daher** 134. **Dahin** 134. **Damit** 189. **Dar** 135. **Darein** 134. **Daß** 189. **Dative** after adjectives 196, after verbs 197. **Dative** and accusative after verbs 198. **Dative** in phrases 199. **Davon** 134. **Dazwischen** 134. **Denn** 145, **denn** in questions 148. **Denn doch** 148. **Denn wohl** 148. **Dependent Sentences** 172. **Difference** of gender showing difference of meaning 15. **Dimidiatives** 69. **Diphthongs** 2. **Distributives** 68. **Doch** 146. **Doch ja** 148. **Down** 137. **Durch** 126, 210, 211. **Dürfen** 96.

Eben 152. **Eben wollen, eben sollen** 100. **Ehe** 189. **Emphatic words** 170. **Einher** 134. **Either** 74. **Ent** 125. **Er** 125. **Ergänzung des Prädikats** 163. **Erst** 152. **Erweiterung des Prädikats** 164, 167. **Every** 70. **Extension of the Predicate** 164, 167.

Feminine: general rules 11. **Feminines ending in el and er** 19, 221. **Feminines of the strong declension** 25, 222. **Finite Verb** 166. **Foreign nouns: general rules** 40; weak, strong and mixed declensions of, 41; with Greek and Latin forms 42; with forms from modern languages 43; lists 250. **Fort** 134. **Forth** 135. **Fractions** 68.

Ganz 70. **Gar** 151. **Ge:** masc. and fem. nouns in **ge** 14; **ge** verbal prefix 125. **Gegen** 215. **Gender of Nouns** 10. **Genitive** 195. **Genitive of quality and dimension** 196. **Genitive after adjectives** 196. **Gen. in adverbial clauses** 197. **Gen. after verbs** 199. **Gen. with acc.** 200. **Gerade** 151. **Government** 195. **Greek Nouns** 42, see list 250.

Haben 79, 90, 93. **Halben, halber** 212. **Her** 131. **Her** after prepositions 157. **Herbei** 134. **Hier** 158. **Hin** 131, 134. **Hin** after prepositions 157. **Hinein** 134. **Hinter** 129. **Historical Present** 88.

Iambic verse 217. **Immer** 149. **Immer noch** 150. **Imperfect** 88. **Imperfect Subjunctive** 103, 106. **Impersonal verbs** 121. **In** 137, 203, 207, 213. **Indefinite Pronouns** 65.

Indefinite Numerals 69. *Indem*, *indeß* 88. Indicative in dependent sentences 180, 181. Indirect narration 180, 191. Infinitive without *zu* 182, 192, with *zu* 183, 192. Infinitive with an object preceding it 184, 192. *Innerhalb* 207, 210. Inseparable compounds 124. Instrument 211. Intensity 174. Interjections 145. Into 137. Inversion of the subject 166. Irregular verbs 106.

Ja 146. *Ja doch* 148. *Je* — *desto* 159, 190. *Jeder* 70. *Können* 95, 99.

Lang 210. *Laffen* 98, 101. Latin nouns 42, see lists 250. Logical Possibility &c. 102, 106.

Mancher 72. *Manner* 174, 189, 213. Masculine: general rules 10. Masculines in *el*, *en*, *er* mod. in pl. 31. Masc. monos. not mod. in pl. 34. Masculines in *el*, *en*, *er* 227, 235. Masc. primaries 229, 230. Means 211. *Mehr* 72. *Mehrere* 72. *Miß* 125. *Mit* 204, 208, 210, 211, 214. Mixed conjugation 118. Mixed declension 36. Mnemonic Table of Irregular Verbs 109. Modified vowels 2. *Mögen* 97. Motion to or from a place 108. Motive 211. *Müssen* 95, 99.

Nach 204, 214, 215. *Nachdem* 189. Nearer 137. *Neben* 208. Necessity logical 102. Neuters: general rules 12. Neuters with pl. *e* 28, 225. Neuters ending in *el*, *en*, *er* 226. *Niß*, feminine nouns in *niß* 14. *Noch*, *noch* immer 150. Nouns classified 9. Nouns whose pl. ends in *er* 27, 223, 224. Nouns with pl. either *en* or *e* 38. Nouns varying in pl. 38. Nouns only used in pl. 39. Nouns sing. in German, pl. in Engl. 39. Noun sentence 179, 191.

Object 167, 171. Oblique narration 180. Off 134, 138. On 138. Order in a simple sentence 164. Ordinals 67. Other 74. Out 138. Over 138.

Participles 77, 185, 186, 193. Particles 131. Partitive Genitive 195. Parts of Speech 7. Passive voice 86. Past or by 135. Perfect 89. Personal Terminations 79. Place 172, 188. Plural in *er* 27. Possessor 195. Predicate 163, 170. Prefixes 130. Prepositions 152, with genitive 153, with dat. 154, with acc. and dat. 155. Prepositions used after

von 156. Prepositions followed by *zu* with the inf. 184. Prepositions used with the objects of verbs 200. Present 87. Pronunciation 1. Prosody 216. Punctuation 215. Purpose 178.

Quantity of vowels and syllables 6, 216.

Recht 150. Reflective verbs 119, 120, 121. Regular verb 84. Rhyme 218.

Schon 88, 148. **Sein** 81, 90, 93. **Seit, seitdem** 189. Separable Compounds of verbs 129. **So** 189. **So ... daß** 189. **Sobald als, so lange als, so weit als** 175, 190. **So gar** 151. **So that, so as to** 175. **Sollen** 96. **Source** 211. **Strong Declension** 21, 22, 23, 25, 222. **Strong Conjugation** 78, 106, 112. **Subjunctive in dep. sentences** 180, 181. **Such ... as** 175. **Summaries of Remarks on Pronouns** 63, on numerals 75, on tenses 89, on the auxiliaries of tense and voice 93, on the auxiliaries of mood 105, on conjunctions and complex sentences 187.

Tenses 77, 87. **The ... the** 175. **Time** 173, 188, 209. **Trochaic Verse** 217.

Über 126, 127, 128, 205. **Um** 126, 127, 205, 210, 215. **Um — willen** 212. **Umstandswörter** 140. **Unter** 126, 127, 128, 210, 215. **Up** 137. **Upon** 137.

Ver 125, 134. **Verbs** 76, doubly compounded 139. **Verbs in eln and ern, ten and den** 87. **Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives** 139. **Versification** 216. **Viel** 72. **Voll** 126. **Von** 206, 211. **Vor** 135, 207, 212.

Während 188, 209. **Wann** 188. **Weak declension** 16; lists 19, 219. **Weak conjugation** 78. **Weg** 134. **Wegen** 212. **Weil** 189. **Weiter** 151. **Wenig** 72. **Weniger** 72. **Wenn** 188. **Werden** 83, 92, 94. **Wider** 125. **Wie** 189. **Wieder** 129. **Wo combined with prepositions** 158. **Wohl** 147, in questions 148. **Wollen** 97, 100.

Zer 125. **Zu** 203, 207, 209, 214, after *nach* and *auf* 157. **Zu ... daß** 189. **Zwar** 150.

